

العف الأول الأعدادي (مراتع الكول التعليم) كتاب Gem

Contents

Unit 1 My family and me Unit 1 Cumulative Exercises 51
Unit 2 It's my favourite subject 55
Unit 2 Cumulative Exercises 90
Unit 3 Different people 94 Unit 3 Cumulative Exercises Review A Practice 1 Unit 4 We're using technology! Unit 4 Cumulative Exercises Unit 5 Holidays Unit 5 Cumulative Exercises Unit 6 Let's eatl Unit 6 Cumulative Exercises Review 8 Practice 2 End of Term Practice Listening Texts Irregular Verbs Glossary

توزيع منهج اللغة الانجليزية للصف الأول الاعدادي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٠/٢٠١٩ الفصل الدراسي الأول

Month	New Hello! English for preparatory schools Year One (SB + WB)
September	Unit (1)
October	Unit 1 (cont.) + 2 + 3
November	Review A + 4 + 5
December	Unit 5 (cont) + 6 + Review B
January (2020)	General Revision

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمسوس

Introduction

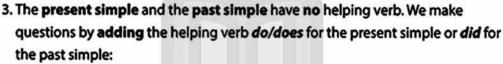
Moving the modal verb to the beginning of the sentence:

٧. تقديم الفعل الناقص على الفاعل

They will arrive tomorrow.

- Will they arrive tomorrow?
- Would she like juice? She would like juice.
- I can swim. Can you swim?
- Samy should study hard. Should Samy study hard?

لاحمَّا أَنَّ لِي كُلُ الأَفْعَالِ النَاقِصَةِ يَتَبِعَمَا الفَاعَلِ ثُم مَصَدَرِ الفَعَلِ.



٣. الجمل في زمن المضارع أو الماضي البسيط لا تحتوي على فعل مساعد، لذلك نستخدم Do/Does مع المضارع البسيط

ونستخدم Did مع الماضي البسيط

They live in Cairo.

Do they live in Cairo? Does Ahmed like English?

Ahmed likes English. Aya made a cake.

Did Aya make a cake?

لاحظ أن (Do / Does / Did) يتبعما الفاعل ثم مصدر الفعل.

٢- ثانياً: السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفعام «Wh- question»:

Question words:

Question word		Question	Answer	
ما /ماذا! What time		- What's your job?	- I'm a doctor.	
		- What time does she usually get up?	- She usually gets up at 8 o'clock.	
Which	أي؟ (للاختيار)	- Which colour do you prefer, blue or purple?	- Blue is my favourite colour.	
When	متی؟ (للزمان)	- When did he go to the cinema?	- He went to the cinema last Friday.	

2+2.

Skills you need

اين؛ (للمكان) Where	-Where did he go last Friday?	- He went to the cinema.
لماذا؟ (للسبب) Why	-Why do you go to school?	-To learn.
who بن؟	-Who played football with you yesterday?	-Mohamed played football with me yesterday.
لمن؛ (الملكية) Whose	-Whose book is this?	- It's Mona's book.
كيف؟ (الحال/الوسيلة) How	-How do you go to school?	- I go to school by bus.
كم العند؛ How many	- How many friends do you have?	- I have nine friends.
م (السعر/الكمية) How much	-How much does this jacket cost?	- It costs L.E. 100.
م (مدة/مسافة) How long	-How long have you been there?	- I have been here for one week.
م (عدد المرات) How often	-How often do you go to the club?	- I go to the club twice a week.

		لاحظ التدويلات الاثية:
Note	Question	Answer
you (اناعل) → I / we	- How do you go to school? - How do you go to school, boys?	- I go to school by bus We go to school by bus.
you (مفعول) → me / us	- What did Mr Said give you, Bido? - What did Mr Said give you, girls?	- He gave me a prize He gave us presents.
your → my / our	- What's your name? - What's your father's job, children?	-My name's BasmalaOur father is a teacher.
are you → I am / we are	- Where are you going? - Where are you going, boys?	- I am going to schoolWe are going to school.
were you → I was / we were	- What were you doing, Ali? - What were you doing, boys?	-I was studyingWe were playing.

Check Your English

This is a fact file of some students. Look and make sentences:



Name: Basel

Age: 12

Likes: football Favourite food: fish with rice



Name: Fatma

Age: 13

Likes: books

Favouirte food: chicken



Name: Maher and Hany

Age: 12

Likes: tennis

Favourite food: ice cream



Age:

Likes:

Favourite food:

1. His name is Basel. He is twelve, he likes football. His favourite food is fish with rice.

Complete fact file 4 for you and write sentences like those in Exercise 1:

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمعاقفة

d) green

Check Your English

3	Listen and	choose the	correct answer	from a,	b, c or d	
---	------------	------------	----------------	---------	-----------	--



- 1. The bag is
- a) new
 - b) Injy's
- d) Lama's sister's c) Lama's

- 2. The pencil case is
- a) red b) blue

 - a) a book about sport
- c) an English book 4. She has also got
- a) some oranges b) an orange 5. The girls are in
 - a) a school
 - b) a house
- c) an apple d) a ball

c) yellow

b) a toy animal

c) a park d) a shop

d) a book about animals

- Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences:
 - Hatem don't like sports. Hatem doesn't like sports.
 - 2. I want play tennis this afternoon.
 - 3. Look! Those children jumping very high.
 - 4. I visit my cousins yesterday.
 - 5. You speak English very good.

Read the text, then answer the questions:

Mr Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Friday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch: chicken and potatoes.



Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food there. The cook makes it all himself.

- 1. Where does Mr Taha work? He works in a school in Port Said.
- 2. What does he usually eat for lunch?
- 3. What does he usually do twice a week?



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحسس

العف الأول الأعدادي مرتع الكرال التعليم المناب Gem

	1000			
	LVOC	TI A	ŀiΛ	•
ш	trod	uС	Uυ	ш

7. candy/July

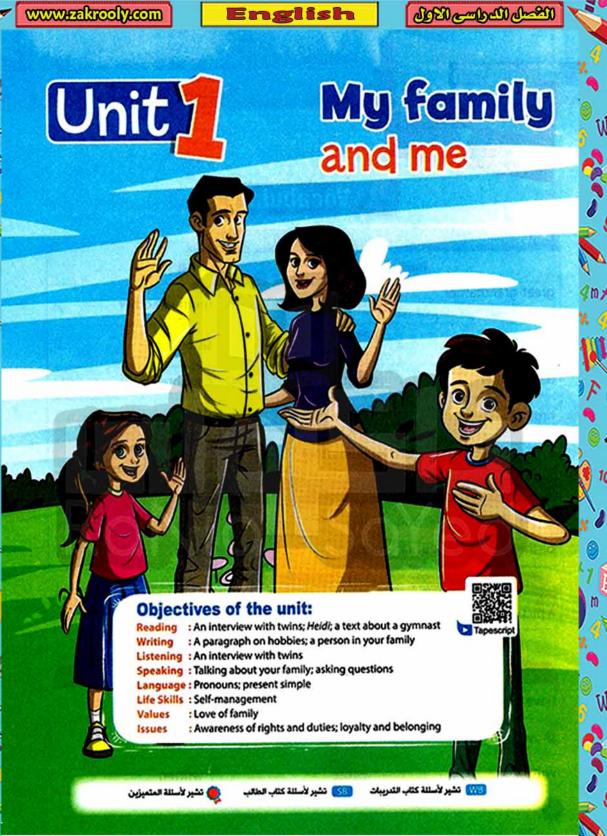
- 4. Why did Mr Taha not want to walk home yestereday?
- 5. Is the weather always rainy in Port Said?
- 6. Who makes the food in the restaurant?
- 7. What does the underlined word there refer to?
- 6 Do these words have the same sound. Listen and put (✓) or (X):
 - washed/talked 2. called/waited 3. blue/duck 4. cake/home
 - 5. shop/chick 6. father/brother
- What did they do at the weekend? Look at the tabe and answer the questions:

8. tail/gate

17.4	Friday	Saturday
Ashraf	play football	visit cousins
Yunis	bake a cake	work in his father's shop
Riham	visit friends	play tennis



- 1. Did Yunis play football on Fridays? No, he didn't. He baked a cake.
- 2. Did Ashraf work in his father's shop on Saturday?
- 3. What did Ashraf do on Friday?
- 4. Did Riham visit her cousins on Friday?
- 5. Where did Yunis go on Saturday?
- 6. What did Riham do on Saturday?
- Write about your weekend. What do you usually do? What did you do vesterday?



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فللصفي



SB pages 2 & 3, WB page 72

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	8 8	دات الرئيسية	المفر
Far	nily	members ð	أفراد الأسر
great-grandfather الأكبر (جد الأب/الأم)	الجد	uncle سم/ خال	ام mum = mother
grandfather	جد	great-grandchildren بناء الأحفاد	انت sister
dad = father	اب	parents نوالدان	ابنة daughter
brother	اخ	cousin بن/ابنة (العم/العمة/الخال/الخالة)	aunt عمة/خالة
son	ابن	grandmother قيدة	

Additional Vocabulary		بة	فردات الإضافي	الم	
family tree	شجرة العائلة	male	مذكر	finish (ed)	ينتمي
birthday	عيد ميلاد	female	مؤنث	today	اليوم

Prepositions	4831714		ف الجر	حرو	
a picture of	صورة لـ	belong to	ينتمى إلى/ يخص	next to	بجوار
a picture or	ت وره	belong to	يسى بى، يحس	HEAL (O	

تصریف الافعال غیر المنتظمة Conjugations of irregular verbs						
Pro	esent	Past simple -	Past participle			
have/has	يملك/لديه/عنده	had	had			
show	يبين/يوضح	showed	shown			
write	يكتب	wrote	written			

12

2+2.

Confu	ising Words	TO HELD				
son	ابن	sun	شمس	brother	أخ	bother يزمع
uncle	عم/ خال	ankle	كاحل القدم	male	ذكر	mail رسالة بريد إلكتروني

Language Notes

Family	Relationshi	ps
--------	-------------	----

العلاقات الاسرية

Family memi	ber	Relationship
great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر	is my father's/ mother's grandfather.
grandfather 🛶		is my father's/ mother's father.
grandmother	جدة	is my father's/ mother's mother.
brother	اخ	is my father's/ mother's son.
sister	أفت	is my father's/ mother's daughter.
uncle	عم/ خال	is my father's/ mother's brother.
aunt	عمة/خالة	is my father's/ mother's sister.
ال/ العمة/ الذالة) Cousin ال/ العمة/ الذالة)	The state of the s	is my uncle's/ aunt's son. is my uncle's/ aunt's daughter.

فعل جمع + اسم جمع + both

كلُ من الاثنين

Both my parents are teachers at my school.

, too

أيضًا (تأتى في أخر الجملة المثبتة)

Sara is good at English. Basmala is good at English, too.

یسمی / پدعی is called

My grandmother is called Huda.

Check Point



1. My sister likes Arabic, to.

2. Both my brothers likes basketball.

3. My mother's sun is my brother.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيق

Write it right



How to write about your family. تملم كيفية الكتابة عن أسرتك.

- My name's (الاسم).
- I'm (عدد السنوات) years old.
- My dad's name is (الاسم). He is a/an (الوظيفة).
- My mum's name is (الوظيفة). She is a/an (الوظيفة).
- I have (عيد) brothers and (عيد) sisters.
- My grandfather is called (الاسم).
- My grandmother is called (الاسم).
- I have (عبد) cousins. I love my family.

Writing tips

Use capital letters for the beginning of a sentence, names and places.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص والأماكن.

Example

2+2-9

My family tree

My name's Waleed. I'm twelve years old. My dad's name is Ali. He's a teacher. My mum's name's Aya. She's a nurse. I have one brother and one sister. My grandfather is called Sabry and my grandmother is called Safia. I have two cousins, Bahaa and Omar. I love my family.

Now, your turn:

حان دورك الأن:

Write a paragraph about your family.

	my family	
My name is		

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوي

Reading

Pre-reading question:

Lesson

- What's the name of Ali's grandfather?

Read and write the names of the people 1-10.

Hello! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture of my family(1). My mum's(2) name is Amira. She's

a teacher. Next to her is my dad (1). His name is Adel.

He's a teacher, too. Both my parents (4) are teachers at my school.

They have one daughter(5) - she's my sister(6), Lamia, and she's 9 years old. And they have two sons one, and my brother, Khaled.

He's 11. Our grandmother to is 64 and she's called Huda. She's my

mum's mother. My mum's father is our grandfather (9) - he's called

Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy, she's my mum's sister and she's

my aunt(10). My uncle(11) is called Marwan.

Their son is called Tarek, and he's my cousin(12). It's his birthday today - he's 3

years old.

Post reading questions:

- 1. What's Ali's father's job?
- 2. How many persons are there in Ali's family?

(1) 3334

(2)

(3)

SB page 3

الوقدين (4)

(5) بند (5)

(6) للت

(7)

(8)

(9) مية

(10) 384 /Ann

عم/خال (11)

ابن العم/الذال (12)





a) uncle

d) daughter

d) cousin

d) aunt

d) in

d) chef

d) daughter

d) aunts

b) great-grandparents

d) great-children

c) brother

c) cousin

c) cousins

WB

WB

WB

WB

Unit

Vocabulary Exercises

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Your sister is your parent's
 - b) sister c) brother
 - 2. Your mum and dad are your
 - - a) grandparents
 - c) parents
 - 3. Your aunt and uncle's child is your
 - a) uncle b) aunt c) son 4. Your mum or dad's brother is your
 - a) uncle b) sister 5. This is a picture my family.
 - a) at b) next
 - c) of 6. My aunt is a She works at school.
 - a) pilot b) teacher c) mechanic
 - 7. My mum's sister is my
 - a) uncle b) aunt
 - 8. Lamia and Hani are my
 - a) sisters b) uncles
- Read and correct the underlined words:
 - 1. My father's brother is my aunt.
 - 2. My sister is my father and mother's son.
 - 3. Your grandmother is the grandfather of your mother or father. (......
 - 4. Female is the opposite of mail

Language

1. Possessive adjectives

صفات الملكية

·We use possessive adjectives to show something belongs to somebody

نستخدم صفات الملكية لنبين ملكية شخص لشيء ما. (ويأتي بعدها اسم)

my - his - her - its - your - our - their



تستخدم (my) للتعبير عن ملكية المتكلم المفرد أي دملكي أناء. ويمكن أن تأتي مع الضمائر (me). وتترجم إلى حيء في آخر الاسم مثل: قلمي - كتابي - أبي - مدرستي.

- I want my pen.

-This is my book.

- My father is a teacher.



تستخدم (his) للتعبير عن ملكية الغائب المفرد المذكر أي دملكه هو». ويمكن أن تأتى مع الضمائر (he, him). وتترجم إلى مع عنى أخر الاسم مثل: بيته - جده - مدرسته.

- He built his house last year.
- This is his pen. Give it to him.
- His school is big.



تستخدم (her) للتعبير عن ملكية الفائب المفرد المؤنث أي دملكها هيء. ويمكن أن تأتي مع الضمائر (she , her). وتترجم إلى حماء في أخر الاسم مثل: بيتما - جدما - مدرستما.

- She wants to visit her grandfather.
- Her school is next to her house.



تسـتخدم (its) للتعبيــر عن ملكية المفــرد غير العاقل (المذكر أو المؤنــث) أي «ملكه هو أو ملكما هي». ويمكن أن تأتي مع الضمير (ft). وتترجم إلى حــه أوـــما» في أخر الاســم مثل:

نيله انياما - رقبته / رقبتما.

- The dog ate its food.

- The cat always moves its tail when it's happy.

Unit 7



تسـتخدم (your) للتعبيــر عن ملكيــة المخاطب المفرد والجمــع أى «ملكك أنت أو ملككم أنتم». ويمكن أن تأتى مع الضمير (you). وتترجم إلى هـــك أو ـــكم» فى آخر الاسم مثل: بينك/ بينكم - جدك/ جدكم - مدرستك/ مدرستكم.

- -This is your pen.
- You should do your homework, boys.
- Your sister is very thin.



تستخدم (our) للتعبيـر عن ملكيـة المتكلم الجمـع أي دملكنا نحن». ويمكــن أن تأتي مع الضمائر (we , us). وتترجم إلى حناء في آخر الاسم مثل: بيتنا - جدنا - أبانا – مدرستنا.

- We want to go to our grandfather.
- Our school is very big.



تســتخدم (their) للتعبير عن ملكية الغائب الجمع (المذكر والمؤنث العاقل وغير العاقل) أى دملكهم هم». ويمكن أن تأتى مع الضمائر (they , them). وتترجم إلى دـــهم» فى لَذر الاسم مثل: بيتهم - جدهم - مدرستهم.

- The birds move their wings when they fly.
- The girls want their hair very tall.
- They visited their grandfather last night.

لاحـظ: - صفات الملكية لا بد أن يأتي بعدها الاسم (الشيء المملوك).

لَاحَــظ؛ - يمكن أن نستخدم كلمة (belong to) للتعبير عن الملكية.

مفعول + belong/belongs + to + الفاعل

-This is Ali's bag. It's his bag. It belongs to him.



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمعلقة

yours

ours

theirs

2. Subject & Object pronouns ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول Subject Object **Possessive Possessive** adjectives pronouns pronouns pronouns صفات الملكية ضمائر الملكية ضمائر الفاعل ضمائر المفعول mine me my him his his He She her her hers it amiso It its

you

our

their

your

our

their

- تأتى ضمائر الفاعل قبل الفعل(في بداية الجملة):

- I like English.

You

We

They

- They play football on Monday.

- تأتى ضمائر المفعول بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر:
- Huda is my aunt. I visit her on Fridays.
- This book belongs to me.

- تأتى ضمائر الملكية بعد الفعل في نهاية الجملة:

- It's my pen. It's mine.
- They're her bags. They're hers.

Unit

Language Exercises

0	Choose the	correct	answer	from a,	b, c or	d
---	------------	---------	--------	---------	---------	---

- Lina and Hatem are parents.
- a) him b) she c) my d) me
- 2. We have one cousin, Khadeeja. parents are my uncle and aunt. WB
- a) She b) Her c) Hers d) My
-names are Imad and Dina.
- d) Theirs a) Their b) They c) Them
- 4. A: What's the boy's name? B: name is Mohab. a) My b) Your c) Her d) His
- 5. This dog is very nice. name is Ben.
- a) Its b) It's c) It d) Itself
- 6. We can't come on Saturday. It's father's birthday.
- a) their b) your c) our d) ours 7. This house is It belongs to us.
- a) your b) ours c) my d) their
- 8. Mr Said teaches English.
- b) his d) her a) he c) us
- 9. Take books, Ali.
- a) his b) her c) your d) my

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Can I have a look at yours camera?
- 2. The dog had his breakfast.
- 3. This bag belongs to Huda. It's her.
- 4. Mum always wakes my up early.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى في المعلمة



2+2-

SB pages 4 & 5, WB page 73

Vocabulary

Key Vocabu	ary		فردات الرئيسية	الم	
interview	مقابلة/حوار	twin	توءم	aged	بالغ من العمر
hobby	مواية	band	فرقة موسيقية	voluntary work	

Additional V	ocabulary	ية	غردات الإضاف	الم	
story/stories	قصة/قصص	great	عظيم	sports	ألعاب رياضية
Which?	ای؟	favourite	مفضل	children's l	nospital مستشفى الأطفال
together	معنااسوينا	use (d)	يستخدم	photos	صور فوتوغرافية

Langua	ge Expressions		للغويا	ات ا	التعبير	
\overline{n}	chess	يلعب شطرنج	10		hobbies	يمارس هوايات
play >	the drums	يعزف على الطبل	do		voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعى
	basketball/footl	ball يلعب كرة السلة/القدم	go	>	swimming	يذهب للسباحة
watch >	a football match م	يشاهد مباراة كرة الق	liste	n to	▶ music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
onTV	مَى التلمّارُ	on Saturday evening	في مساء السبت
What kind of?	ما نوع؟	listen to	يستمع إلى

different in the come to it tous		ENDINES ELLE	12	الكلمات وعكس		sit	l Opposi	Words and
false مواب true نفس الشيء the same مختلف	خطا	lse	ا صو	rue واب	نفس الشيء e same	A	مختلف	different

21

Unit

P	resent	Past simple	Past participle
meet	يقابل	met	met
win	يفوز / يكسب	won	won

Confusing Words

earn يفوز (مبارة/مسابقة) win bend band فرقة موسيقية

Language Notes

on Mondays

- في أيام الاثنين (أي كل يوم اثنين) I play basketball on Mondays.
- I watch football matches on Saturday evenings.
- ولكن (تعبر عن التناقض) , but
- I don't like football, but I like music.
- do / does + inf. تستخدم هذه الصيفة للتأكيد
- He does play the drums very well.
- يحب (love like (noun / V + ing) يدهب go + (V + ing)
- I go swimming on Saturdays.
- I like chess/playing chess.
- I love football/watching football matches.

Check Point

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. I have like English.
- 2. My brother plays the drums in a bend.
- 3. He plays the drums in Wednesday.

3

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوفة

Write it right

How to write about your hobbies. ڪيف تڪتب عن هوايتك.

- I like playing (اللعبة/الرياضة).
- I play (اللعبة/الرياضة) every week.
- I play it with (الشخص/الأشخاص).
- I play it on (الموعد).
- I play it at the (المكان).
- It's my favourite.

2+2-8

Writing tips

A paragraph should have at least five sentences.

يجب ان تحتوى الفقرة على خمس جمل على

Example

The hobby I like

I like playing chess. I play it every week. I play it with my friends. I play it on Fridays. We play it at the club. It's my favourite.

Now, your turn:

حان دورك الأن:

Write a paragraph about "Your favourite hobby"

My favourite hobby is	My favourite nobby	
	*	

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيف

الصف الأول الأعدادي مرتج الكرال التعليم كتاب Gem

Unit 7

Lesson

Reading

Pre-reading question: - What are Hatem's hobbies?

2. Read the interview and answer the question.



SB. page 4

توام (2) يالغ من العمر (3)

مقابلة/ حوار (1)

الموسيلى (4)

فرلة موسيلية (5)

عمل تطوعی (6)



An interview (1) with twin (2) brothers Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers

and they are both aged (3) 12. They have the same parents and the same birthday. They're twins!

What are your hobbies?

Hazem : I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I go swimming on Tuesdays and I play football on Saturdays.

Hatem : And he watches football matches on TV on Saturday evenings. He loves football!

Hazem : I love football!

Hatem : I don't like football but I like music. I play the drums and I listen to music (4).

Hazem: He plays the drums in a band (5).

Do you do have any hobbies that you both like?

Hazem: We play chess together on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.

Hatem: Yes, that's true! And on Saturday afternoons we

do voluntary work (6).

What kind of voluntary work?

Hazem: We help in the children's hospital.

Hatem: We play games with the children and read them stories. It's great!

Post-reading questions:

- 1. What sports does Imad play?
- 2. Have you got the same hobbies as your brother or sister?









هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوفة

2+2.

My family and me

Vocabulary Exercises

	rrect answer from a, are brothers or sisters		d
a) Teams	b) Drums	c) Bands	d) Twins
Σ. Do you	swimming aft	er school?	
a) make	b) take	c) go	d) play
3. Maher	voluntary work	at a hospital.	
a) plays	b) goes	c) does	d) makes
. He plays the pi	ano in a famous		
a) band	b) bend	c) bank	d) pink
. My father	45 years.		
a) age	b) aging	c) are aging	d) aged
.1	. chess with my friend	s. I usually win.	
a) play	b) do	c) go	d) earn
. We like footbal	l. We play it	on Fridays.	
a) together	b) altogether	c) gather	d) to gather
. I watch TV	the evening	gs on Fridays.	
a) on	b) in	c) at	d) with
Read and corre	ect the underlined w	ords:	
. Football is my f	avourite happy.		()
. I do voluntary j	ob at a children's hosp	oital.	()
. The twins have	the different birthday		()



2+2-

9

SB pages 6 & 7, WB page 74



Key Vocabul	ary		فردات الرئيسية	الما	
	Count	Countries Jesus Je			
Egypt	مصر	France	فرنسا	Oman	عثمان
South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا	Morocco	المغرب/مراكش	an	0

Additional Vocabulary		مته ۷	بقردات الإصاد	مال	
country	بلد/دولة	How long	كم المدة	friend	مديق
live (d)	يعيش	catch a plane	يلدق بالطائرة	Paris	باریس (عاصمة فرنسا)
airport	مطار	work (ed)	يغمل	Cape To	wn کیب تاون (مدینة فی جنوب

Prepositions	PARE.	حروف الجر	
play with	يلعب مع	at home	في البيت

Words and Opposit	es	ت وعكسها	الكلمان	TWO RELIEVED TO THE		
important مام	unimportant غير هام	sad	حزين	happy	سعيد	

لافعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			تصريف الأفعال غير المنتد
	Present	Past simple	Past participle
catch	يلحق بـ	caught	caught
take	يأخذ/يستغرق	took	taken
fly	يطير	flew	flown
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made

Confusing Word	S THE STATE OF THE	r	In an investment of
every day کل یوم	everyday يومی	يسمع (بدون قصد) hear	listen (من قصد) عند
work عمل	job وظيفة	take ناخذ	talk يتكلم

Language Notes

- يستفرق (وقتًا) to + inf. • I took two hours to do my homework.
- make + (مفعول) + inf./adj.
- The teacher made us laugh.
 - The show made us happy.

Check Point

- Read and correct the underlined words:
- 1. How long does it take travel to Alex? (......)
- 2. I usually hear to music in my free time. (......)
- 3. How did the story make you to feel? (......

27

Unit 7

Lesson

Listening

Pre-listening question:

- What's the capital of France?

فرنسا (1)

ر(2)

4. Listen to Sami and Aya. Which three countries do you hear in the conversations?

Sami: My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, France⁽¹⁾. He goes to the airport on Sundays, and he catches a plane to Paris, it takes five hours to fly there. And then, he catches a plane home to Egypt on Thursday evenings. He works very hard. On Saturdays we play

> football in the park, and we play chess. I love my dad, and I'm happy when he's at home.

: My grandmother and grandfather live in South Africa ... They live next to the beach in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's a long way. It takes twelve hours to fly there. I talk to them on the phone, but they don't have a computer, so we can't make a video call. I would like to see them every day, but





Post-listening question:

I can't.

- Where do Aya's grandparents live?



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمساس

Values



 		The state of the s

2. Do you think Aya is sad	that she doesn't see her	grandparents every day?

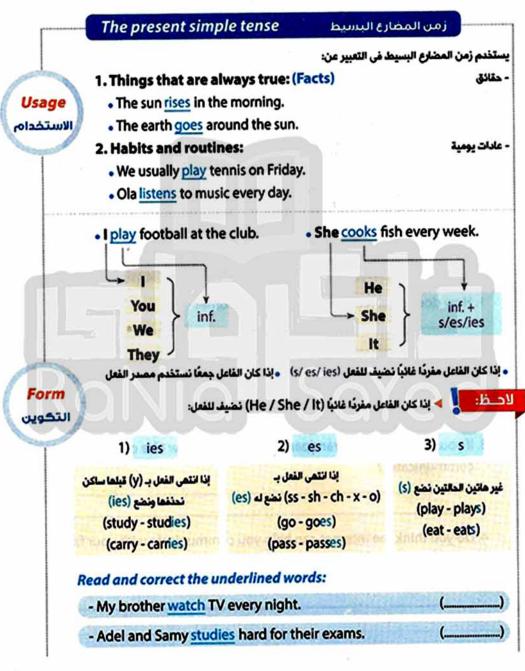
If you don't see your grand;	parents every day, how else can you
communicate??	
communicate??	

4. Do you think the internet can help you communicate with your family?
How so?

2+2.

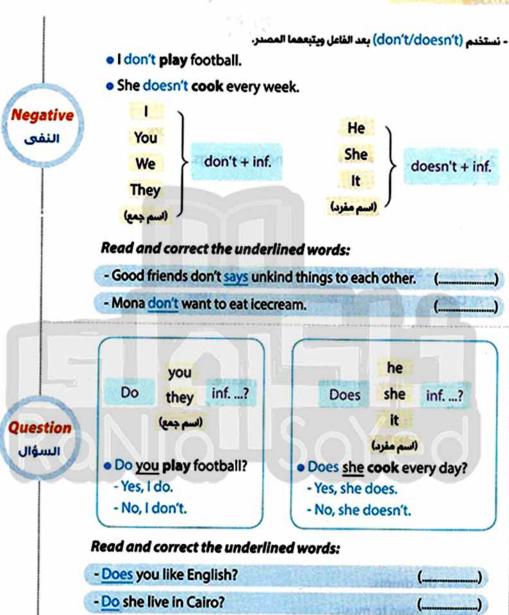
Unit 7

Language









WB

Unit

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My dad in Egypt. He works in London.

a) work b) works c) don't work d) doesn't work

2. He to the airport on Sunday evenings.

a) goes
b) go
c) going
d) is going

3. I the piano very often.

a) plays b) playing c) doesn't play d) don't play
4. Sara like chicken?

a) Does b) Is c) Was d) Has

5. Abdullah and his sister the family car on Fridays.

a) wash b) washes c) washing d) washed
6. Shesafe when her dad is at home.

a) felt b) feel c) feels d) is feeling

a) taken b) take c) taking d) takes

8. He never He can't swim.

a) swim b) swims c) doesn't swim d) not swim

Read and correct the underlined words:

7. It two hours to get there.

2. I doesn't listen to music. (______) SB

3. Do he play football on Mondays? (______)

4. She <u>don't</u> go swimming. (................................)

5. <u>Does</u> you play chess? (......) <u>SB</u>

جملة الرد

My family and me



Ask and answer questions about hobbies السؤال والإجابة عن الهوايات

ما يقال في هذا الموقف Situation

Response

عند سؤال شخص عما اذا كان يمارس هواية لم لا نستخدم الصيغة التالية: - Do you listen to music? * No. I don't. هل تستمع الى الموسيقى؟

> * Yes, I do. هل تلعب الشطرنج؟

> > Yes, of course.

🍆 - نعم بالطبع.

Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:

- Do you play chess?

- Do you play football?

: Sports are very good for us. (1)...... Tarek

هل تلعب كرة القدم؟

Kareem : Yes, I like sports very much. Tarek : (2)_____

Kareem: My favourite sport is tennis. What about you?

Tarek : (3).....

Kareem: When do you practise it?

: (4)_____ Tarek

Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. Hadeer

Nourhan: Yes, I do.

: What's your favourite hobby? 2. Adam

Omar

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيف

Lessons 1,2 & 3

General Exercises

1 Listen and answ	er the following quest	ions:	
1. What is Basmala's	aunt called?		
2. Where does she			
3. Where does she	vork?		
2 Complete the fo			
Nira : I like sports		وجملك	
Salma : (1)	you do a	sport?	
Nira : Yes, I play b	asketball.		
Salma : (2)	do you p	practise it?	
			o you like music?
Salma : (4)			
3 Supply the missi	ng parts in the followi	ng two mini-dialog	ues:
1. Nahed : What are			
Hany : No, I don't			
Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1. Myis r	nother's sister.		
a) daughter	b) grandmother	c) aunt	d) sister
2. Marwan is my fath	ner's son. He's my		
a) uncle	b) brother	c) grandfather	d) cousin

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفه

مرقع الكرلي التعليبي

الصف الأول الأعدادي

a) happy	b) sport	c) hobby	d) food
4. My father	football matches	on the radio.	WE
a) plays	b) listens to	c) goes	d) takes
3 3	anar. It's bag	g.	
a) hers	b) her	c) his	d) your
6. The boys alway	s football m	natches on TV.	
a) watch	b) watched	c) watches	d) watching
7. Their house is s	mall, butho	ouse is big.	
a) we	b) us	c) ours	d) our
8 Aya	's grandfather and gran	ndmother live in Benh	a?
a) Is	b) Do	c) Does	d) Are
Read and corre	ect the underlined wo	ords:	
1. I play swimmin			(
2. I usually make			(
3. Does Mona's pa	arents work in a school		(
4. Mine school is	very nice.		
Write a paragr	aph of SIX (6) senten	ces on:	
	"Your	self"	
3			
•••••			•••••
•••••			

موقع والكرول التطبيعي

الصف الأول الأعدادي

2+2-8

ر و



SB pages 8 & 9, WB page 75 & 76

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	T (L)	THE WA	المفردات الرئيسية			
orphan	يتيم	attic	علية المنزل/ السندرة	mountain	جبل	
adventure	مغامرة	sheep	خروف/ أغنام	goat	عنزة	

Additional Vo	cabulary				
Switzerland	سويسرا	animal	حيوان	walk (ed)	يمشى
arrive (d)	يصل	old man	رجل كبير السن	flower	زهرة
bread	خبز	bed	سرير/ غراش	city	مدينة
best friend	أفضل صديق	bird	طائر	list /	قائمة

	التعبيرات اللغوية	
تمشى في الجبال	see ▶ birds	ترى الطيور
		التعبيرات اللغوية see ▶ birds

Prepositions	2200	BAHREN	ف الجر	حرو	
live with	يعيش مع	a lot of = lots of	کٹیر من	away from	بعيداً عن
at the top of	في أعلى	compare with	يقارن مع		

Words and Opposites			وعكسها	الكلمات			
old	كبير السن	young	صغير السن	big	كبير الحجم	small	صغير الحجم

2+2

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمساس

2+2-8

My family and me

Definitio	ns	التعريفات
goats	ماعز	animals that are like sheep
orphan	يتيم	a child with no mother or father
attic	علية المنزل/السندرة	a room at the top of a house
city	مدينة	a place with lots of houses and shops

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs						
Present		Past simple	Past participle			
know	يعرف	knew	known			
sleep	ينام	slept	slept			
go	ينمب	went	gone			
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk			
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten			

Confu	sing Words						isit it
sheep	خروف	cheap	رخيص	bread	خبز	beard	لحية
list	قائمة أشياء	menu	قائمة طعام			Marie and the	

Language Notes

My teacher of English is like my father.

مثل (للتشبيه)

37

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى المعصفة

Unit 7

essons 485



Reading



Pre-reading questions: 1. Do you know the story of Heidi? 2. Where does she live?

 Read the story and put these pictures in the correct order. SB. page 8

Heidi is the story of an orphan(1) girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man.

He lives in a small house in the mountains (2) and he has lots of goats (3).



را) منبع

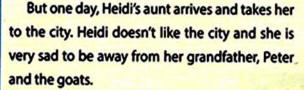
(2) Ju ماعز (3)

علية المنزل (4)

مقامرات (5)

Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic 40 of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her best friend, Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy!



Heidi has lots of adventures (5) in the city.





Post-reading question:

- What do you think of the story?

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوي

a) soil

a) orphan

a) goats

a) tea

My family and me

Vocabulary Exercises

c) ground

c) parent

c) cities

c) milk

c) of

1	Choose the	correct	answer	from	a, l	b, c	or	d:
---	------------	---------	--------	------	------	------	----	----

b) floor

b) twin

- Ais very high.
- 2. A/An has no mother or father.
- 3. Cairo and Alexandria are big
 - b) countries a) lakes
- 4. A/Anis at the top of a house. c) mountain b) attic
- a) orphan 5. Farmers like to keep to get meat and milk.
 - c) ducks b) cheap
- 6. Most people eat lots of food with
 - c) beard b) milk a) cheese
- 7. Young people like to have many
- c) adventures b) mountains a) attics
- 8. Children like to drink in the morning.

b) coffee

- 9. He is a man three children.
- - b) with a) in

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. She lives in her grandfather in the country.
- 2. Goats are animals that are like cheap.
- 3. She spells in a bed in the attic of the house.

d) mountain

WB

WB

WB

d) hill

d) uncle

d) seas

d) geese

d) bread

d) advertisements

d) sugar

d) on

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوفة



العف الأول الأعدادي (عراض التعليم) كتاب Gem

Unit 1

Speaking

How to talk about your best friend

كيف تتحدث عن صديقك المفضل Situation ما يقال في هذا الموقف Response حملة الرد - What's his/her name? * My best friend's name ما اسمه/ اسمما؟ - اسم صديقي/ صديقتي المفضلة ر مو(____). - How old is he/she? كم عمره/ عمرها؟ He's/She's (العدد) years 9 old. ال - عمره/ عمرها عاما. - Where does he/she live? أين يعيش/ تعيش؟ * He/She lives in (المكان). ر - موا مي تعيش في (- What's his/her favourite food? * His/Her favourite food ما هو طعامه/ طعامها المفضل؟ is (الطعام). - طعامه/ طعامها المفضل هو - What are his/her hobbies? ما هوایاته/ هوایاتها؟ His/Her hobbies are (الموايات). - هواياته/ هواياتها هي



2 6



m

My family and me

Speaking Exercises

Comm	lata the	following	dialogue:
Comp	iere me	IOHOWING	dialogue:

Alyaa : Hello, Merna. What's your best friend's name?

Merna : (1)_____

Alyaa : (2)_____?

Merna: She's eleven.

2+2-8

9

Alyaa : What's her favourite sport?

Merna:(3).....

Alyaa : Do you like tennis, too.

Merna : (4)_____

Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. Ahmed: What's your favourite food, Ali?

Ali

2. Hossam:

Salma : Her hobby is fishing.





SB page 10, WB page 77

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية	
achieve (d)	يحقق/ينجز	athlete	لاعب رياضي
train (ed)	يتعرب	gymnast	لاعبة جمباز
gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز	Olympics	الألعاب الأوليمبية
dream (ed)	حلم/يحلم	balance (d)	يوازن
top	أفضل/أول		

Additional vocat	oulary	المفردات الإضافية	
busy life	حياة مشغولة/مزىحمة	work hard (ed)	يعمل بجد
healthy food	طعام صحي	age	عمراسن
study hard	يذاكر بجدية	Africa	قارة أفريقيا
school studies	دراسات مدرسية	team	فريق

Language Expressions		التعبيرات اللغوية		
achieve ▶ dreams	يحقق أحلام	stay ▶ strong	يېقى قوى	

2+2.8

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمساس

English

المحمل الكولسي الكول

My family and me

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
in the evenings	في المساء	for five hours	لمدة خمس ساعات

Words and Opposit	es	الكلمات وعكسها	
busy مشغول/مزىدم	free خرامتفرغ	محی healthy	فيرمحى unhealthy
strong قوی	weak معيف	معب difficult=hard	easy was

Confusin	g Words	R BAG S					
athlete	لاعب قوى	athletics	ألعاب قوى	life	الحياة	live	يعيش

Language Notes

so that + فاعل + can/could + inf.

لکی

- Habiba eats healthy food so that she can stay strong.
 - I went to England so that I could learn English.
- ألعاب الجمياز (مفرد لايُعد) gymnastics Gymnastics is my favourite sport.

Check Point



- 1. I do sports so that I could get fit.
- 2. Sports people have very busy live.
- 3. Athletes are sports like running and swimming.

How to write about a member of your family.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوفة

الصف الاول الاعدادي مرتع الكرال التعليم كتاب Gem

Write it right

گیف تکتب عن فرد من آسرتك.

- My (.....s) name is (الاسم).
- He's (العدد) years old.
- He lives in (المكان).
- He is (الوظيفة).

2+2-8

- His favourite food is (الطعام).
- His hobbies are (الموايات).
- I love him/her so much.

Writing tips

Punctuation marks: Start each sentence with a capital letter. Use capital letters for: names, cities, days of the week, etc. End your sentence with a (.), (!) or (?).

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة. بداية الجمل.أسماء الأشخاص والمدن وأيام الأسبوع.

تنتص الجملة بنقطة، علامة استفعام أو علامة تعجب.

Example

My grandfather

My grandfather's name is Kamal. He's 65 years old. He lives on a farm in Benha. He's a farmer. His favourite food is fish and rice. His hobbies are reading and fishing. I love him so much.

Now, your turn:

حان دورك الأن:

m

Write a paragraph about someone in your family.

	my aunt	
My aunt's name is		
-		

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمساس

Lesson

My family and me

Reading

Pre-reading question:

- Which sport makes Habiba happy?

1. Read about Habiba Marzouk. Which sport makes her happy? SB page 10

Habiba Marzouk achieves her dreams



Habiba Marzouk is a gymnast⁽³⁾. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with her family. Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she trains (4) for five or six hours. She is a top (5) gymnast in Africa and she wants to go to the Olympics (6). Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy food so that she can stay strong. Gymnastics is a difficult sport but it makes her happy.

- يحلق/ينبز (1)
- (2) نديم
- لاعبة جمية (3)
- يتىرب (4)
- متنوق (5)
- الألماب الأوليمبية (6)
- ألعاب الهمياز (7)

Post-reading questions:

- 1. How long does Habiba train?
- 2. How do you stay strong?

a) gymnast

a) achieve

d) athletics

d) watch

d) fast

d) away

d) stay

d) maths

d) poor

Unit

Vocabulary Exercises

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. My sister likes sports. She's a famous
 - 2. Every athlete wants to go to the
 - a) mathematics b) physics c) athletics d) Olympics

c) nurse

c) forget

c) balance

c) physics

c) unhealthy

3. Good students work hard to their dreams.

b) writer

- b) sleep 4. We should eat food to keep fit.
- a) healthy b) unhealthy c) fried
- 5. My cousin is astudent in his class. He always gets high marks.
 - a) bottom b) top c) middle
- 6. Fathers should between their work and families. a) make b) train

b) gymnastics

- 7. Habiba eats well becauseis a difficult sport.
- a) gymnast
- 8. I eat healthy food to stay
- a) weak b) strong
- Read and correct the underlined words:
 - 1. Al Ahly is my favourite sport.
 - 2. Egypt is a country in Europe.
 - 3. We eat healthy food to stay weak.
 - Habiba Marzouk is a gymnastics.

Lessons

General Exercises

1. Where does H	eidi's grandfather live?		·
a) In the city.		b) In the village	ge.
c) In the count	try.	d) In the mou	
2. What does He			* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
a) The city.	b) The mountains	. c) The town.	d) The village
3. Who is Heidi?			
a) An orphan.	b) A student.	c) A nurse.	d) A doctor
4. Who takes He	di to the city?	ALL A STATE OF THE	
a) Her mother		c) Her aunt.	d) Her cousin.
2 Supply the m	issing parts in the follow	ing two mini-di	alogues:
	o you like watching footb		
	O you like watering look		
		•	
Waleed .		7	
Mohammed : N Read the follo My name's La	ly favourite hobbies are re owing, then answer the o mia. I'm 9 years old. I live i	eading and sports questions: n Aswan with my	family. My parents ar
Mohammed: No. 10 My name's La teachers. My brothers. Ali Khaled goes swi is called Aya. We	ly favourite hobbies are re owing, then answer the o mia. I'm 9 years old. I live i other Ali is 13 years old ar plays football at school a mming. There is a swimm play basketball at school,	eading and sports questions: n Aswan with my nd Khaled is nine nd he watches fo ing pool near our	family. My parents ar I listen to music wit potball matches on To house. My best frien
Mohammed: No Read the following My name's La teachers. My brothers. Ali Khaled goes swi is called Aya. We team is very goo	ly favourite hobbies are re owing, then answer the o mia. I'm 9 years old. I live i other Ali is 13 years old ar plays football at school a mming. There is a swimm play basketball at school, d.	eading and sports questions: n Aswan with my nd Khaled is nine nd he watches fo ing pool near our	family. My parents ar I listen to music wit potball matches on To house. My best frien
Mohammed: No Read the following My name's La teachers. My browny brothers. Ali Khaled goes swi is called Aya. We team is very good. Answer the following the following swift is called the	ly favourite hobbies are re owing, then answer the o mia. I'm 9 years old. I live i other Ali is 13 years old ar plays football at school a mming. There is a swimm play basketball at school, d. owing questions:	eading and sports questions: in Aswan with my and Khaled is nine and he watches for ing pool near our and we're both in	family. My parents are. I listen to music wit botball matches on Tr house. My best frien in the school team. Ou
Mohammed: No Sead the following the following My name's La teachers. My browny brothers. Ali Khaled goes swift is called Aya. We team is very good Answer the following Manay brown many many many many many many many man	ly favourite hobbies are re owing, then answer the o mia. I'm 9 years old. I live i other Ali is 13 years old ar plays football at school a mming. There is a swimm play basketball at school, d. owing questions: others has Lamia got?	eading and sports questions: in Aswan with my nd Khaled is nine and he watches fo ing pool near our and we're both in	family. My parents are. I listen to music with the family matches on The house. My best frien in the school team. Ou
Mohammed: No Read the following My name's Lateachers. My brown brothers. Ali Khaled goes swi is called Aya. We team is very good Answer the following. What is Lamia	ly favourite hobbies are re owing, then answer the o mia. I'm 9 years old. I live i other Ali is 13 years old ar plays football at school a mming. There is a swimm play basketball at school, d. owing questions: others has Lamia got?	eading and sports questions: in Aswan with my nd Khaled is nine and he watches fo ing pool near our and we're both in	family. My parents ar I listen to music wit botball matches on To house. My best frien In the school team. Ou
Mohammed: No Sead the following the following with the following the following with the following win the following with the following with the following with the fo	ly favourite hobbies are re owing, then answer the o mia. I'm 9 years old. I live i other Ali is 13 years old ar plays football at school a mming. There is a swimm play basketball at school, d. owing questions: others has Lamia got?	eading and sports questions: in Aswan with my nd Khaled is nine and he watches fo ing pool near our and we're both in	family. My parents ar I listen to music wit botball matches on To house. My best frien In the school team. Ou
Mohammed: No Read the following Northers. My brothers. Ali Khaled goes swi is called Aya. We team is very good. Answer the following. What is Lamia 3. Who is Aya? B) Choose the correspondent of the following of the followin	ly favourite hobbies are re owing, then answer the comia. I'm 9 years old. I live in other Ali is 13 years old are plays football at school as mming. There is a swimm play basketball at school, d. owing questions: others has Lamia got?	eading and sports questions: in Aswan with my nd Khaled is nine and he watches fo ing pool near our and we're both in	family. My parents ar I listen to music wit botball matches on To house. My best frien In the school team. Ou
Mohammed: No Read the following My name's Lateachers. My brown brothers. Ali Khaled goes swi is called Aya. We team is very good Answer the following. What is Lamia 3. Who is Aya? B) Choose the corresponding and Aya	ly favourite hobbies are recoving, then answer the comia. I'm 9 years old. I live in other Ali is 13 years old are plays football at school at mming. There is a swimmer play basketball at school, d. Sowing questions: Others has Lamia got?	eading and sports questions: In Aswan with my Ind Khaled is nine Ind he watches for Ing pool near our Ind and we're both in	family. My parents are. I listen to music with potball matches on To house. My best friends in the school team. Ou
Mohammed: No Read the following Northers. My brothers. Ali Khaled goes swi is called Aya. We team is very good. Answer the following. What is Lamia 3. Who is Aya? 3) Choose the corresponding to	ly favourite hobbies are recoving, then answer the comia. I'm 9 years old. I live in other Ali is 13 years old are plays football at school at mming. There is a swimmer play basketball at school, d. Sowing questions: So there is a swimmer play basketball at school, d. Sowing questions: So father's job?	eading and sports questions: in Aswan with my nd Khaled is nine and he watches fo ing pool near our and we're both in	family. My parents ar I listen to music wit botball matches on To house. My best frien In the school team. Ou
Mohammed: No. 18 Read the following the following with the following the following brothers. Ali Khaled goes swith is called Aya. We team is very good Answer the following the followin	ly favourite hobbies are recoving, then answer the comia. I'm 9 years old. I live in other Ali is 13 years old are plays football at school at mming. There is a swimmer play basketball at school, d. Sowing questions: Others has Lamia got?	eading and sports questions: In Aswan with my Ind Khaled is nine Ind he watches for Ing pool near our Ind and we're both in	family. My parents are. I listen to music with potball matches on To house. My best frien in the school team. Ou

d) streets

Unit '

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. My aunt and uncle live in the Their house is in a high place.
 - a) mountains b) ground
 - 2. Framers get from goats.
 - a) bread b) meat c) ice d) eggs 3. Habiba Marzouk is a famous who wants to go to the Olympics.

c) floor

- a) teacher b) gymnast c) mechanic d) cleaner
- 4. Students should balance between their school and hobbies. a) studies b) teachers c) friends d) partners
- 5. My cousins and I go to the same school.school is very near.
- a) Their b) Your c) His d) Our 6. feel happy?
- a) Are you b) You are c) Do you d) You do
- 7. This lab is Khaled's. It belongs to
- b) him c) his d) her
- 8. My grandparents on a big farm.
 - a) live b) lives c) living d) to live
- 5 Read and correct the underlined words: 1. Athletes train hard to say strong.
- 2. Playing chess takes me very happy.
 - 3. My parents work at the same school. His school is next to our house.
 - 4. He isn't like playing tennis.
- Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on: "Your favourite sport"

			••••••				••••
•••••	••••••					•••••	••••
•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	••••••		
	•••••						

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى في المعلمة

2+2-8

My family and me

Unit 1 Review

Vocabulary

Vocabulary			فردات	الم	-
interview	مقابلة/ حوار	twin	توأم	aged	بالغ من العمر
orphan	يتيم	band	فرقة موسيقية	voluntary wo	ممل تطوعی Ork
adventure	مغامرة	attic	علية المنزل/السندرة	mountain	ببل
achieve (d)	يحقق/ ينجز	dream (ec	حلم/ يحلم (أ	gymnast	لاعبة جمباز
train (ed)	يتدرب	top	أفضل/ أول	Olympics	لألعاب الأولمبية
gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز	athlete	لاعب رياضي/قوي	balance (d)	وازن
Ko	Fan	nily members	د العائلة		dI.
great-grandfa	ther الجد الأكبر	great-gra	ndchildren أبناء الأحفاد	sister	ند
grandfather	جد	uncle	عم/خال	daughter	بنة
dad = father	اب	parents	الوالدان	aunt	ممة/خالة
brother	Ę	grandmot	ther جدة	cousin (بة/الخال	بن/ابنة (العم/العد
son	ابن	mum = m	ام other		

49

2+2.

Language

1. Possessive dajec	tives	15/34		متحي	صفات ال		
Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل		we	you	he	she	it	they
ضمائر المفعول Object pronouns	me	us	you	him	her	it	them
منات الملكية Possessive adjectives	my	our	your	his	her	its	their
ضمائر الملكية Possessive pronouns	mine	ours	yours	his	hers		theirs

Statements	Negative	Questions
They play football. He plays football.	They don't play football. He doesn't play football.	Do they play football? Does he play football?
	حقائق Facts	Habits else
Usage	- We write English from left to right.	- My father usually goes to work by car.
Key words	ofte - عادةً usually - دائمتا always On Satur - كل every - لبدأ never	

Speaking /

1. Ask and answer questions about hobbies

- Do you listen to music?
- -Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

2. Asking and answering questions about your best friend

• What's her name?

- Her name is Ola.
- Where does she live?
- She lives in Cairo.



Unite

Cumulative Exercises

أهم أسئلة كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وأسئلة GEM على الوحدة الأولى.

		F		T
1. My name's Basmala.	()	(,
2. My aunt is called Huda.	()	(1
3. She's from Cairo.	()	(
4. She works in a school.	()	(
5. She teaches Maths.	()	(
Complete the following dialogue:				
Dalida: This is a photo of my cousin.				
Reem :(1)	?			
Dalida : It's Fares.				
Reem : (2)	?			
Dalida : He's 14.			3	
Reem : Where does he live?				
Dalida: He lives in Giza.				
Reem : (3)	?			
Dalida: He loves fish with rice.				
Reem : (4)	?			
Dalida: He likes basketball.				
Supply the missing parts in the following	two mini-di	ialogu	es:	
Menna: Where does your grandfather live?				

Samira: I have milk and cheese.

Unit

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Farida Osman was born on 18th January 1995. She is an Egyptian swimmer. She is the fastest female swimmer in Egypt and Africa. Her father is a doctor. She started swimming at the age of five at the Gezira Sporting Club with her brother Ahmed. Farida took a break from swimming, then at the age of 11, she returned to swimming and won. She became the youngest Egyptian and Arab athlete to win. She was named the Best Female Athlete in Africa in 2017. In 2018, she won three medals.

A) /	Answer	the	follow	ing qu	lestions:

- 1. How old is Farida Osman? 2. Who is Ahmed? ______
- 3. What happened in 2017?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4. Farida's father is a a) teacher b) swimmer c) doctor d) player
 - 5. Farida won medals in 2018.
 - b) two c) three d) four a) one
- 1. Ais a place with lots of shops and houses. d) cinema c) park a) attic b) city
 - 2. Habiba has no time to lose. She is always
 - d) difficult a) free b) busy c) easy
 - 3. I every day to be fit.
 - d) train a) watch b) take c) eat
 - WB 4. Habiba eats well becauseis a difficult sport.
 - b) gymnastics a) gymnast
 - d) mathematics c) physics 5. Munir and Mustafa are twins. sister is called Radwa.
- d) Our
 - b) Her c) Their a) His
 - 6. She is my best friend and hobby is tennis.
 - d) your b) her c) my a) his

WB

WB

WB

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوفة

10



الصف الاول الاعدادي مراتع الكرولي التعليمي کتاب Gem



2+2.

SB pages 12 & 13, WB page 79

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	فردات الرئيسية	ما
Schoo	ادراسية Subjects	Ilagic II
Arabic اللغة العربية	art التربية الفنية/الرسم	اللغة الإنجليزية English
computer studies دراسات الحاسب الألى	home economics الاقتصاد المنزلي	social studies الدراسات الاجتماعية
الدراما (أدب المسرحيات) drama	music التربية الموسيقية	religion النين
science العلوم	maths الرياضيات	

Additional V	ocabulary	ية ا	فردات الإضاف	الم	
study (y ied)	يدرس/يذاكر	a quarter past	وربع	break	فسحة/راحة
travelling	السقر	half past	ونصف	lesson	حصة/درس
a quarter to	إلا الربع	timetable	جدول الحصص	$Y \in$	

Lang	uage Expressions		التعبيرات اللغوية	
have	► a lesson	لديه حصة	say ▶ the time	يقول الوقت
tell	▶ the time	يخبر الوقت		

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
good at	جید فی	ways of	طرق لـ

Words and	l Opposit	es		لمات وعكسها	ता —	Selection Studies of Co.
after	بعد	before	قبل	start (ed)	يبدا	finish (ed) ينتمي

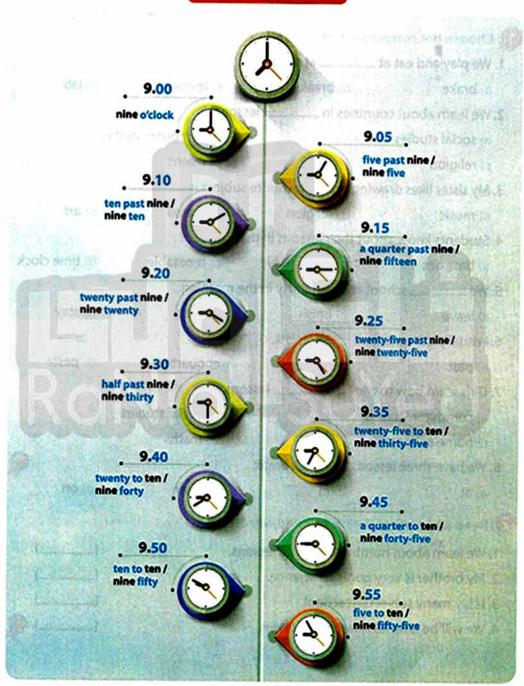
55

العن الأول الأعدادي مرتع طكرال التطبيع كتاب Gem

It's my favourite subject

m

How to say the time



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى في المعلمة



2+2.

Vocabulary Exercises

1. We play and eat at	at school.		
a) brake	b) break	c) lesson	d) lab
2. We learn about cou	ıntries inle	ssons.	
a) social studies		b) computer stu	idies
c) religion		d) maths	
3. My sister likes draw	ring, so her favourite	subject is	
a) music	b) religion	c) drama	d) art
4. Students know abo	out their lessons in th	e	
a) time out	b) time study	c) timetable	d) time clock
5. Weschool	ol at seven thirty in th	e morning.	
a) leave	b) finish	c) start	d) stay
6. I usually get up at h	nalfsix.		
a) past	b) to	c) quarter	d) paste
7. Girls learn how to d	ook inlesse	ons.	
a) computer studie	s CL	b) social studies	\bigcirc
c) home economic		d) maths	
8. We have three less	onsbreak.		
a) at	b) in	c) after	d) on
Read and correct t	the underlined word	is:	
1. We learn about nu	mbers at <u>music</u> lesso	ns.	()
2. My brother is very	good <u>for</u> science.		()
3.1 stay many subject	ts at school.		()
4. We will be late. It's	quarter too seven.		() 🥊





It's my favourite subject

Speaking

Asking and answering about school and timetable السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة وجداول المواعيد





2+2.

Speaking Exercises

1	Complete	the	following	dialogue
---	----------	-----	-----------	----------

: Hello, Salah. (1)..... Samir

: I study English, maths, Arabic and science. Salah

: (2)_____ Samir

: My favourite subject is English. Salah

: Do you like art? Samir

Salah

: What time is the break at your school? Samir

: (4) Salah

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. Basmala: What day is it today?

Boody :

2. Tom

: I have five lessons every day. Sam



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحافقة



2+2

SB pages 14&15, WB page 80

Vocabulary

	ماا	فردات الرئيد	سية	ulary	Key Vocab
عيدًا جدًا	far away	نموذجی/ مثالی	typical .	الحياة اليومية	daily life
طعب	playground	صالة/ قاعة	hali	جرس	bell
		كم مرة؟	How often?	مكتبة (للقراءة)	library

Additional V	ocabulary	افية	فردات الإض	اله	
Nairobi	نيروبى	Kenya	كينيا	because	لأن
road	طريق	talk (ed) with	يتكلم مع	trip	رحلة قصيرة
student	ظالب	walk (ed)	يمشى		

Demittions		التعريفات
library	مكتبة (للقراءة)	You can find a lot of books here.
playground	ملعب	It is in a school. You play games here.
bell	جرس	It rings when a lesson starts and finishes.
hall	قاعة/صالة	It is a big room for a lot of students and teachers.

La	nguage Expressions		التعبيرات اللغوية	
hav	e ▶breakfast/lunch	يتناول الإفطار/الغداء	get ▶ home	يصل إلى البيت
do	homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلي	read ▶ English books	يقرأ كتب إنجليزية

Unit 2

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
help in the home	يساعد في أعمال المنزل	get to	يصل إلى
at break	في الفسحة	on school days	في أيام الدراسة

Words and Opposites			بات وعكسها	الكله	NAST, TOTAL		
busy	مزدحم أمشغول	empty	غارغ	always	دائمنا	never	ابن

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

	Present	Past simple	Past participle
get up	ينمض/يستيقظ	got up	got up
ring	يرن/ يدق	rang	rung

Confusin	g Words		The state of the s				
away	أعيدا	a way	طريق/طريقة	half	ئصف	have	مند/ميما
talk	يتكلم	take	يائذ	day	692	daily	يومينا

Language Notes

يوصل شخصًا بالسيارة شخص + drive

My father always drives me to school.

a school / schools / المبنى المدرسي school / schools

Our city has twenty schools.
School finishes at four o'clock.

Check Point

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My father has a car, so he gives me to school.

2. It talks about ten minutes to go to school.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى المناصفة

العث الاول الاعدادي مرتع الكول التعليم كتاب Gem

Write it right

How to write about your day/daily life. كيف تكتب عن يومك/حياتك اليومية.

- My name's (الاسم).
- I go to a preparatory school in (المكنن).
- I usually get up at (الساعة).
- I often (نعن) in the morning.
- I always (فعل) after school.
- I usually (معلى) with my friends.
- We sometimes go out in the evening.
- I never (نعل) on school days.

Writing tips

A paragraph has:

- a topic sentence
- supporting sentences
- a concluding sentence.

يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على: - حملة رئيسية

- جمل داعمة للموضوع
- حملة تلخيصية (تلخص الفكرة الرئيسية

للفقرة).

Example

My daily life

My name's Basem. I go to a preparatory school in Giza. I usually get up at 7 o'clock. I often walk to school in the morning. I always do my homework after school. I usually meet my friends. We sometimes go out in the evening. I never sleep late on school days.

Now, your turn:

حان دورك الأن:

Write a paragraph about your day.

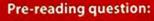
"My school day"	
	"My school day"

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحسس



Lesson

Reading



- How does Akeyo go to school?

3. Read the text again and answer the questions.

SB page 14

Daily life around the world

This is a typical (1) day for me. On school days I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far

"I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi, in Kenya.

away (2), so we never walk there. It always

تمونجی/مثعی (1) بعينا جنا (2)

جرس (3)

(4) lett/like

ملعب (5)

مكتبة (للترابة) (6)

takes a long time because the roads are busy. When we hear the bell (3) at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall (4). We have four lessons, then it is break.

I usually talk with my friends in the playground 5, but sometimes we go to the library 60 to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I get home, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a busy day!"

Post-reading question:

- When does Akeyo go to bed?

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحافقة

العف الأول الأعدادي مرتع الكرائي التعليم كتاب Gem

It's my favourite subject

Life Skills

Compare your typical day with Akeyo's day. What is the same? قارن يومك المثالي بيوم اكييو. ما وجه الشبه؟ ما وجه الاختلاف؛ What is different?

Similarities	Differences
- We both get up at half past six.	- Akeyo never walks to school. I sometimes walk to school.

Vocabulary Exercises

1	Choose the	correct answer	from a,	b, c or d	
---	------------	----------------	---------	-----------	--

1. All the children i	n our school go to the	e when the he	eadteacher want
to talk to us.			WB
allah	b) library	c) bookshop	d) ball

- 2. At break, I play games with my friends in the
 - d) library a) playground b) bell c) classroom
- WB 3. For homework, we often read books from the d) hall a) laboratory b) library c) playground
- 4. I lunch with my family at three o'clock.
- d) have a) stay b) do c) take
- 5. Students should get up earlya school day.
- d) in a) at b) from c) on 6. I visit my grandmother I do it every day.
- d) day c) weekly a) a day b) daily

Read and correct the underlined words:

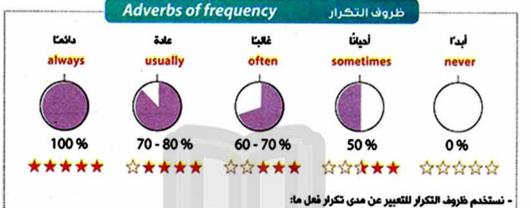
- 1. I take a long time to go to school because my house is far a way. (.....)
 - 2. We often buy English books in the library.
 - 3. My father always dives me to school in his car.

نستخدمها قبل الفعل الأساسى.

٢- إذا سبقها فاعل جمع يتبعها مصدر الفعل:



Language



- ol always walk to school.
- Sally never gets up late.
- He usually plays football.

- نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط:

- ١- إذا سبق ظروف التكرار فاعل مفرد يتبعما فعل مضاف اليه (s/es/ies)
- Ola sometimes goes to school by bus.
- We usually play football on Mondays.
 - ٢- إذا تم استخدام ظروف التكرار بعد (am/is/are) يتبعهم صفة.
- They are usually late.
 - عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (كم مرة How often) كالتالي:

- How often do Akeyo and her brother walk to school?
 - -They never walk to school.
- How often does your mother help you?
 - She sometimes helps me.



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمحسس

by plane.

It's my favourite subject

WB

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d	1	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c	or d:
---	---	--	-------

1. Amir plays ba	sketball after school o	n Monday, Tuesday and	Wednesday.
Не р	olays it.		WB
a) never	b) often	c) sometimes	d) always
2 Mr Badr does	not like flying and he	always travels by train.	He trave

- b) usually c) always d) never a) often
- 3. Dina goes swimming on Thursday and Saturday. Shegoes swimming.

b) usually c) sometimes d) always a) never reads the newspaper in the morning. She reads it every day. 4. Elena

- c) sometimes d) often a) always b) never
- 5. Our teacher gives us a lot of homework, not every day.
- d) often a) rarely b) never c) always
- 6. Howdo you watch TV before you go to bed?
- d) often a) old b) long c) much
- 7. Basmala always tennis every Friday.
- d) played b) playing a) play 8. Welate for school. We always go on time.
- d) aren't never b) never are c) are never a) never aren't

Read and correct the underlined words:

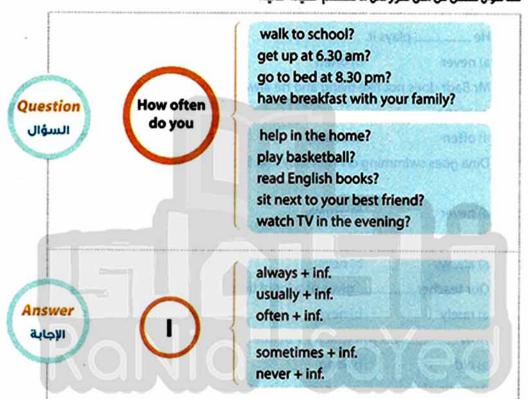
- 1. How often does you have English a week?
 - 2. Does he often goes out in the evening?
 - 3. He helps always his father.



Speaking

Ask and answer questions with "How often?"

عند سؤال شخص عن مدى تكرار فعل ما نستخدم الصيغه التالية:



Speaking Exercises

Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

: How often do you help in the house? 1. Amira

Salwa

2. Marawan:

Ashraf : I always walk to school.



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى يعصمه



Language Expressions

2+2.

SB pages 16 & 17, WB page 81

Vocabulary

Key Vocabu	lary		فردات الرئيسية	المت	
notebook	كراسة/ دغتر	Whose?	لمن/ ملك من؟	pencil case	مقلمة
motorbike	دراجة بخارية	uniform	زی موجد	rules	قواعد

Additional Voc	abulary		فردات الإضافية	الم	
jacket	جاكث	shoes	حذاء	сар	قبعة/كاب
football shirt	قمیص کرة ة	T-shirt	تی شیرت	office	حجرة المكتب

say	▶ unkind things يقول اشياء غير طيبة	follow ▶ the school ru	les يتبع القواعد المدرسية
wear	► the school uniform پرتدی الزی المدرسی	do homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلي

التعبيرات اللغوية

Words a	nd Opposit	es		بات وعكسها	الكله	Drive of State	
outside	داخل	inside	خارج	forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر
kind	طيب/ عطوف	unkind 🍑	غير طيب/ عط			slut	6

تصریف الافعال غیر المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs				
Prese	nt	Past simple	Past participle	
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten	
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn	

69



Life Skills

Remember to follow class and school rules. Complete the rules with always تذكر أن تتبع القواعد المدرسية والصفية. أكمل القواعد التالية مستخدمًا (always/never) or never

- 1. We always do our homework.
 - 2. We _____ listen to the teacher.
 - 3. We _____ forget our pencil cases and notebooks.
 - 4. We _____ help each other.
 - 5. We _____ wear our school uniform.
 - 6. Wesay unkind things to other students.

Can you think of some more rules? Write them. Then compare in pairs.

هل يمكنك التفكير في بعض القواعد؟ اكتبها ثم قارن.

c) fail

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct and	swer from a, b, c or d:
------------------------	-------------------------

- 1. We always school rules.
- a) fellow b) fill
- 2. We never unkind things to each other.
 - b) speak a) say c) talk
- the school uniform. 3. They always
- b) where a) were c) wear
- 4. We use a to move from a place to another.
- a) notebook b) pencil case c) sharpener
- 5. My school
 -is a white shirt and blue pants. a) rule b) uniform
- the school. I can't get it in. 6. My car is
- a) inside b) outside c) above
- Read and correct the underlined words:
- 1. It is Huda notebook?
 - 2. In this box, there are girls's T-shirts.
 - 3. Who's shoes are these? They are Ali's.

WB.

d) follow

d) put up

d) picture

d) in

d) motorbike

d) see

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصواقع

It's my favourite subject

Language

Possessive's

تستخدم ('5) / (5') الملكية للتعبير عن ملكية شخص/ أشخاص لشيء ما:

(s) (Sparent)	Ciparen	2112316/7 (U (S')	a cinsted te	
نستخدم (٤´) الملكية بعد الاسم المفرد الذي ليس آخره حرف (٤)		م (′) مع الاسم الجمع المنتظم المنتمى بحرف (s) بى وأمى) my parents' house		
Heba's computer Adel's book my friend's car mum's job	(کمبیوتر مبة) (کتاب عادل) (سیارة صدیقی) (وظیفة أمر)	my friends' pens the teachers' room a girls' school	(أقلام أصدقائى) (حجرة المدرسين) (مدرسة بنات)	
نستخدم (و٬) الملكية بعد الاسم الجمع الذي ليس آخره حرف (و) (جمع غير منتظم). - That is not the children's notebook (كراسة الأطفال) - My uncle has a shop that sells men's clothes (ملابس رجال)		لاسم المفرد المنتمى بحرف (s). It's Lamees' dress. That's Shams' school	یمکن استخدام (') مع ۱۱ (فستان لمیس) (مدرسة شمس)	

لاحظ: لا تستخدم (٤) مع الجماد.

- I repaired my car door.

وعند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم (Whose) كالتالى:

Whose + (object) is/are?

- Whose shoes are these?
- They are Ali's shoes.
- Whose pencil case is this?
- It is Hamdi's.
- Whose box is it?
- It's my sisters' box.



Language Exercises

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Mycar was not expensive. They bought it ten years ago.
 - a) parents's b) parents'

- c) parents
- d) parent's

- 2. My dad is my uncle.
 - a) cousin
- b) cousin's 3.sister is twelve years old.
- c) cousins

c) Tamer

c) mens'

c) mum's

d) Tamers

d) cousins's

- a) Tamer'
 - b) Tamer's
- 4. The shoes are on the second floor.

d) men's

- a) men
- b) men' 5. These are my keys.

a) mum

a) Samy's

- b) mums' 6. Fouad is one offriends.

 - b) Samys'
- c) Samys's
- d) Samy

d) mums's

7. This bag is a) Lamee's

a) table

- b) Lamees
- c) Lamees'
- d) Lamees is

d) tables's

- 8. Ali broke theleg yesterday.
 - b) table's
- c) tables'
- Read and correct the underlined words:
- That is my friend bike.
 - 2. This car is my car and that car is Tom.

3. The children bikes are very nice.

4. My brother's like to go swimming.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيف

Lessons

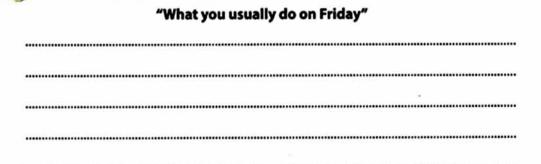
General Exercises

			Mark Mark Control
1 Listen a	nd answer the following	questions:	
1. What is	Nadeen's favourite subjec	t?	1.4
2. How ma	any lessons does Nadeen l		
	ng does the break take?		
	te the following dialogu		
Daughter	: I have a busy day today.		
	: Why! (1)		?
Daughter	: Today is Tuesday. I have	eight lessons at school.	
	:(2)		?
	: 1 (3)		
	drama, religion, English		
Mother	: (4)		
Daughter	: Thanks, mum.		
3 Supply	the missing parts in the	following two mini-dial	ogues:
1. Habiba	: What do you always do		
Amar	:		
2. Aya	:		?
Wessam	: These are my brother's I	books.	
Choose	the correct answer from	a, b, c or d:	
1. On a	weekend, I visit r	ny grandmother.	WB
a) bored	d b) weak	c) typical	d) strong
2. We know	w it is time for the next le	sson when we hear the	. WB
a) pill	b) bill	c) bell	d) ball

3. Students use their	to keep th	eir pens in.	
a) pencil sharpener	b) pencil case	c) lunch box	d) desks
I. I usually talk with m	y friends in the	during break.	
a) class	b) playground	c) classroom	d) library
5. These are the	football shirts.		
a) boys	b) boys'	c) boys's	d) boy'
6. Mr Said is in the	room.		
a) teacher	b) teachers	c) teacher's	d) teachers
7. Amir walks to schoo	l on Sunday, Monday	y, Tuesday and Thurso	day. He
walks there.			
a) never	b) usually	c) sometimes	d) always
3. I have breakfast at 7	o'clock every morni	ing. I have	e breakfast at
time.			
a) often	b) sometimes	c) always	d) never

A COMPANY OF THE PROPERTY OF T	
Boys don't often have <u>house</u> economics at school.	()

- The hole is a big room at school.
- 3. Yara reads never English books.
- 4. How many do you do your homework?



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى

6 Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:



2+2

SB pages 18 & 19, WB page 82 & 83

Vocabulary

	اله	المفردات الرئيسية		
	اشعال	وسائل النقل	of transport	Forms
قطار	train	اتوبيس	bus	زورق طویل خفیف/الکنو canoe
يركب الدراجة	cycle	سيارة	car	عربة الثلج snowmobile

Additional V	ocabulary	فية	مفردات الإضا	ال	
Lake Bunyony	بحيرة بونيوني أ	the USAالأمريكية	الولايات المتحدة	winter	الشتاء
PE (physical education) التربية البدنية		village	rain (ed		تمطر
snow	جئيد/ ثلج	only	فقط	French	اللغة القرنسية
language	لفة	again	مرة أخرى	meet	يقابل
Uganda	أوغندا	travel (led)	يسافر	V_{\wedge}	

Language Expressions		التعبيرات اللغوي
take ▶ a journey to	يقوم برحلة سفر إلى	live ▶ a long way from يعيش على مسافة بعيدة من
walk ▶ to school	يمشي إلى المدرسة	

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
on time	في الوقت المحدد	from one side to the other side	من جانب إلى جانب أخر
in a canoe	في زورق	on a snowmobile	في عربة الثلج
walkalong	يمشى بامتداد	cycle to	يركب الدراجة إلى
arrive in	يصل إلى (مدينة/دولة)	arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)

75

يأخذ ... إلى المدرسة

يأخذ ... إلى البيت

لديه / عنده



Words and	Opposit	es	الكلمات وعكسها		FRIS SERVICE
important	هام	unimportant غير هام	high	عالِ	منځفض low
good at	جید فی	bad at سيئ من	cheap 🗸	رخيد	expensive غالى اللمن
friendly	ودود	unfriendly غير ودود	healthy	صد	unhealthy غير صحى

Confusing Words

alice کنج quite مامنا/الی حد ما quite کنج ice جلید

Language Notes

وسيلة المواصلات + by

- وسیلة المواصلات + (a/an/the/my/his...) + وسیلة المواصلات
- in + (a/an/the/my/his....) + car/taxi/canoe • I go to school by bus. / on the bus.
- My father goes to work by car. / in his car.

take + (مفعول) + to school

- take + (مفعول) + home
- The canoe takes the children to school every day.
- The bus takes us home after school.

have / has got

- I have got English on Monday.
- She has got science after break.

Check Point

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. I go to school on a car. (...
- 2. What subjects has you got today? (......
- 3. Ali goes to school by his bike.

76

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصواقع

Write it right



My name's (الاسم)

المكان) I live in (المكان).

I go to school with (الشخص/الأشخاص).

My school is (قريبة/بعيدة)

I travel to school by (الوسيلة).

It takes about (الوقت المستغرق).

It's (وصف الرحلة) journey.

Writing tips

A paragraph should have a topic sentence. - يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة

على جملة رئيسية.

Example

My school journey

My name's Marwa. I live in Luxor. I go to school with my friends. My school is far from my house. We travel to school by ferry. It takes about an hour. It's not an easy journey.

Now, your turn:

حان دورك الأن:

Write a paragraph about how you go to school.

	"How I go to school"	
My name is		

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمسوس



4 / Culture

Lesson

Reading

Pre-reading question:

- How do you travel to school?

1. Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 18

How do they go to school?

In some countries, children live a long way from their school.

They do not go to school by car(1), bus (2) or train(3).

- 1. Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle 4 to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time.
- 2. These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe (5). The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.
- 3. This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile (6)!

اتوبيس (2)

عربية (1)

تطار (3) يركب الدرلية (4)

قارب طویل (5)

عربة الثلج (6)







Post-reading question:

- How do children cross Lake Bunyonyi?

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحافقة

It's my favourite subject

Listening

Pre-listening question:

- What is Aya's favourite subject?

Lesson

1. Listen and check your answers to exercise 1.

: That's the bell. Aya

Friend: What subject have we got next?

: Let's look at the timetable. Aya

Friend: We've got computer studies next. In the

hall, hurry.

: Computer studies! I'm not very good at Aya

computer studies.

Friend: I love it, it's my favorite. What's your favorite subject, Aya?

: I like science and languages. Are you good at languages?

Friend: I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French.

: Who's our English teacher this year? Aya

Friend: It's Mrs. Amal.

Oh good! She's really friendly. Aya:

Friend: When have we got English?

: It's after break. Aya

Friend: What time is break?

: It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Aya

Friend: Let's meet in the playground, and go to the library.

Aya : OK.

Post-listening question:

- What time is the break?

SB page 19





2+2.5

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the cor	rect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1. Some children in	n Uganda go to scho	ol a car	noe.
a) from	b) in	c) to	d) on
2. The canoe	children to sc	hool and home aga	ain every day. 🔃
a) drives	b) rides	c) takes	d) cycles
3. Where the boys use a snowmobi	live in the USA, then	e is a lot of	in winter, so th
a) snow	b) wind	c) rain	d) storm
4. He goes to scho	ol by bike. He likes		
a) painting	b) walking	c) cycling	d) flying
5. Are you good	science?		
a) at	b) for	c) to	d) in
6. there's a lot of sr	now in the		
a) winter	b) spring	c) summer	d) fall
7. Lake Bunyonyi is	in		Vad
a) Egypt	b) Uganda	c) Kenya	d) Senegal
8. Football and rea	ding are		
a) hobbies	b) languages	c) subjects	d) sports
Read and correc	ct the underlined wo	ords:	
1. Cycling to schoo	l is healthy and expe	nsive.	()
2. Ali usually arrive	s <u>in</u> school at 7:15.		()
3. My brother usua	lly go to work <u>on</u> a ta	xi.	()
4. I don't like math	s, but I'm not good at	it.	()





It's my favourite subject

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about school

السؤال والإجابة عن الدراسة

Situation ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



1. How do you travel to school?

كيف تسافر إلى المدرسة؟

* I travel to school by bus. - أنعب إلى المدرسة بالأتوبيس.



2. How long does it take? كم تستغرق الرحلة؟

 About ten minutes. - حوالي ١٠ يقائق.





3. Are you good at languages? هل أنت جيد في اللغات؟

* Yes, I'm not bad at them. - نعم، أنا جيد فيهم.





4. Who is our English teacher this year?

من هو مدرسك في اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام؟

* Mr Waleed Ali.

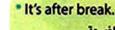


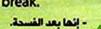


5. When have we got English? متى موعد حصة اللغة الإنجليزية؟









- الأستاذ وليد على.





Speaking Exercises

(1) Complete the following dialogue:

Maher : Hello, Hisham. (1).....?

Hisham: Mr Mohammed is my maths teacher this year.

Maher : What are your favourite subjects?

Hisham: (2)_____

Hisham: Yes, I'm good at science.

Maher: When have you got P.E?

Hisham: (4).....

2) Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. Menna:

Aya : We have English after break.

2. Lamiaa: What subjects have you got this year?

Ghada:



82

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمحسس



2+2.

SB page 20, WB pages 84 & 85

Vocabulary

Key Vocab	ulary	بسية	فردات الرئ	الم	
preparatory	المرحلة الإعدادية	favourite subject	مادة مفضلة	daily life	حياة يومية
project	مشروع	Hurgada	الغردقة	dinner	وجبة العشاء

Langua	ge Expressions		ت اللغوية	التعبيرا	
	a shower	يستدم	come	▶ home from	يأتي إلى البيت من
have >	fruit and tea	يتناول فاكهة وشاينا	go	▶ shopping	يذهب للتسوق
	lunch/dinner	يتناول الغداء/العشاء			

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
around the world	حول العالم	on the bus	في الأتوبيس
by + time	قبل/بحلول	read in bed	يقرأ وهو في الفراش
in the first lesson	في الحصة الأولى	at the end of	في نماية
"be" + from	یاتی من (مکان)	for breakfast	على وجبة الإفطار
at the weekend	في العطلة الأسبوعية	works with	يعمل مع

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة					
Present		Past simple	Past participle		
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	waken up		
put on	يرتدى	put on	put on		
come	يأتى	came	come		

83



Lesson

Reading

Pre-reading question: - What are Amira's favourite subjects?

1. Read about Amira. Write the questions a-c in the correct places. SB page 20

A Day in My Life!

Amira is from Egypt.

Q: 1. How old are you, and where are you from?

A: I'm twelve years old, and I'm from Hurgada.

Q: 2. What subjects do you like?

A: This year, I'm in preparatory 1 at school. My favourite subjects are Science, Computer Studies and Maths. We have Science and Maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have Computer Studies on Wednesday. I like music too, but I'm not very good at it!

Q: 3. What do you usually do after school?

A: I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my homework before I have dinner. After dinner, I usually have a shower and read my book in bed. What time do you wake up and go to bed?

Post-reading questions: - What time do you wake up and go to bed?

Read the email and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places. WB page 84



Hi Nagwa,

How are you? You want to know what my parents do at the weekend. My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. My brother always plays football when we go there! He is very good at football. What about you? What do you do at the weekend? Best wishes,

Lama





2+2.

It's my favourite subject

Vocabulary Exercises

a) primary	b) nursery	c) secondary	d) preparato
2. My friend, Amir,	isLuxor.		
a) over	b) for	c) on	d) from
3. We sci	ence and maths in the	e first lesson every day.	
a) stay	b) watch	c) have	d) read
4. My father alway:	a shower e	every morning.	
a) has	b) does	c) makes	d) goes
5. My mother alwa	ys advises me not to s	study bed.	
a) for	b) on	c) of	d) in
6. My mother alwa	ysshopping	on Sundays.	
a) goes	b) grows	c) wakes	d) gives
7. Amira likes musi	c, but she isn't	at it.	
a) bad	b) good	c) easy	d) hard
B. What do you do	the weeken	d?	
a) on	b) at	c) with	d) from
Read and correc	t the underlined wo	rds:	
I. The teacher give	s us the homework or	n the end of the lesson.	(
2. Amal is good for	art.		(
3. I always make m	homework before I	have dinner.	(



Lessons 4,5 &6

General Exercises

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Where does Reem come from?
 - d) Cairo. c) Tanta. b) Benha. a) Giza.
 - 2. What subject does she like?
 - d) English. b) Maths and Arabic. c) Science and art. a) Science.
 - 3. How good is she at art?
 - d) Excellent. c) Good. a) Not bad. b) Not good.
 - 4. What is her favourite hobby?
 - c) Swimming. d) Reading. a) Watching TV. b) Music.
- Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

: Are you good at languages? 1. Ameer

:______.I like French. Maha

2. Asmaa

: We have got drama, home economics and religion after school. Samr

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Some children find it difficult to go to their school around the world because they live a long way from their schools. Firstly, in Uganda children live next to a lake and their school is on the other side, so they don't walk to school. They go in a canoe to get there. Secondly, in the USA there is a lot of snow in winter, so children go to school on a snowmobile. Thirdly, in China some children live on a high mountain, so they walk along this very high road. It takes them 5 hours to get to their school.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1. How many countries are there in the passage?
- 2. What do you think the most difficult way to go to school from the passage?
- 3. How do children travel to school in China?



2+2-8

9

		it's my t	avourite subject
B) Choose the correct	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
4. The underlined	word "there" refers to		
a) school	b) China	c) the USA	d) Uganda
5. In China, it takes	hours to	go to school.	
a) two	b) three	c) four	d) five
4 Choose the corr	rect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
1. My sister is good	d at She li	ikes English and French	
		c) home economics	
	lake to the other sid		
a) train	b) canoe	c) taxi	d) car
3. In winter in the l	USA there is lots of		
a) warmth	b) heat	c) snow	d) sun
4. A: What	do you like? B: Ma	aths and science.	1 ENCORPOR
	b) sports		d) hobbies
	o the library at break		
	b) don't		d) no
6. Students	forget their note	books at home.	
	b) always		d) not
7. What is your	favourite sub	ject?	
	b) sisters		d) sisters's
8. That is my father	and car.		
	b) mothers'	c) mother	d) mothers
(5) Read and correc	t the underlined wo	ords:	
1. I often go on my	school uniform at 7	am.	()
2. She usually has a	show in the bathroom	then she goes to bed.	()
3. My dad jacket is	blue.		()
4. She never is late	for school.		()
Write a paragrap	ph of SIX (6) senten	ces on:	
	"A day in	your life"	
	.50	•••••	
			87



2+2.

Unit 2 Review

Vocabulary

School Subje	cts		واد الدراسية	مال	
Arabic	اللغة العربية	art	التربية الفنية/ الرس	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
computer stud	ies دراسات الحاسب	home econo	omics الاقتصاد المئزلي	social studies مية	الدراسات الاجتما
طرحیات) drama	الدراما (أدب المد	music	التربية الموسيقية	religion	الدين
science	العلوم	maths	الرياضيات	library	مكتبة (للقراءة)
break	فسحة/ راحة	timetable	جدول الحصص	far away	بعيدًا جدًا
daily life	الحياة اليومية	typical	نموذجی/ مثالی	playground	ملعب
bell	جرس	hall	قدلة /قالم	pencil case	مقلمة
notebook	كراسة/ دفتر	Whose?	لمن/ ملك من؟	rules	قواعد
motorbike	دراجة بخارية	office	حجرة المكتب	canoe الكنو	ورق طو <mark>يل خفيف/</mark>
pencil case	مقلمة	uniform	زی موحد	favourite sub	ject مادة مفضلة
snowmobile	عربة الثلج	grade	صفا مرحلة		







It's my favourite subject

Language

1. Adverbs of frequency often



60 - 70 %



sometimes



never

- I never go to school late.
- How often does your mother help you?
- He never goes to school late.
- -She sometimes helps me.

2. Possessive's

- 1. It's the girl's notebook.
- 2. That is not the children's notebook.
- 3. The girls'names are Judy and Ola.

Speaking

- 1. How often do you walk to school?
 - I always walk to school.
- 2. What subject have we got next?
 - We have got Arabic next.
- 3. Are you good at languages?
 - Yes, I'm not bad at them.
- 4. Who is our English teacher this year?
 - Mr Waleed Ali.
- 5. When have we got English?
 - It's after break.



Cumulative Exercises

أهم أسئلة كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وأسئلة GEM على الوحدة الثانية.

Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or False (F):

1. I usually get up at half past seven.	()	()
2. I have breakfast at seven on 5.	()	()
3. I go to school at seven fifteen.	()	()
4. The first lesson starts at 7:45.	()	()
5. I go home at ten to thirteen.)	()
2 Complete the following dialogue:				WB
Hatem :(1)	, Ema	d?		
Emad : I like English.				
Hatem : Who's our English teacher this year?				
Emad : It's Mrs Badr.				
Hatem : She's a good teacher. And (2)		4		?
Emad : We have it today, after break. Then we				9
Hatem : Good, I like maths. Are (3)				?
Emad : Yes, I'm quite good at maths. I'm not l	oad at scienc	e, too.		
Hatem : Yes, you're good at science. (4)				
Emad : The break is now. Let's go to the play				

Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

: How do children go to school when there is a lot of snow in the USA? 1. Soha Sara

Soliman: We have got computer studies after break.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى في المعلم

or borrow.

It's my favourite subject

Read the following, then answer the questions:

I have a wonderful break time at school. It comes after the fourth lesson. It is usually between 11 and 11.30 in the morning. Break time is quite important because it makes us ready for the coming lessons. We never stay in our classes during the break. Some students play sports in the playground. Others open their lunch boxes and start eating together. I really enjoy myself during the break. After lunch, I go to the school library where there are lots of good books to read

A) Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined word "Others" refer to? 2. When is break? ...
- 3. What do students do during the break?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4. Students in classes during the break. a) don't stay b) always stay c) revise d) study
- 5. The writer break. a) likes b) doesn't like c) never like d) no likes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The trains are slow, but buses are a) free b) quick c) busy d) fat
- 2. I arrived Uganda last week.
 - a) in b) at c) on d) no word 3. We paint and draw inlessons.
- a) art b) music c) maths d) science
- 4. Ais used for travelling when there is snow.
- a) lake b) bike c) canoe
- d) snowmobile 5. Wego to school on Fridays. WB
- a) never b) sometimes c) always d) often
- 6. This bike is my It's his. a) cousin b) cousin's c) cousins
- d) cousins's

WB

WB

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوفة

الصف الأول الأعدادي مرتج الكرالي التعليم كتاب Gem





Different people







Reading : A description of a sports star; a blog post; Alice's Adventures

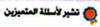
in wonderland

: Writing a blog post about a friend

Listening : Descriptions of people

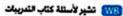
Speaking: Describing people; talking about likes and dislikes

Language: have/has got; can/can't Life Skills: Respect for diversity; resilience













الصف الأول الأعدادي مرتع الكرائي التعليمي كتاب Gem



SB pages 22 & 23, WB page 86

Vocabulary

Key Vocabula	ary	TAKE	فردات الرئيسية	اله	
features	ملامح	has got	لديه/عنده/يمتلك	quiz	اختبار قصير
look like (d)	يشبه	famous	مشعور	easy for	سمل ل
	Hairt	ypes	شمر جائل المالية	أنواع ال	
short hair	شعر قصير		curly hair	شعر مجعد	
dark hair	شعر داکن	9	straight hair	شعر مستقیم	
long hair	شعر طويل	g	blond hair .	شعر اشتر	
	Face	features	رهه الساهر	ملامة الو	
moustache	شارب	0	beard	لحية	3
glasses	ظارات				





2+2-8



موقع والكوولي التطبيب

الصف الأول الأعدادي

Different people

Listening

Pre-listening question:

- What does Samir look like?

Listen. Tick (✓) the picture of Samir.





Lesson











Boy: There's my friend Samir.

Girl: I don't know Samir. What does he look like(1)?

شعر غامل المير (2)

Boy: He's got short, dark hair (2).

نظرة (3)

بثبه (1)

Girl: Oh! I think I can see him. Has he got glasses⁽³⁾?

(4) لعية

Boy: No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.

Girl: Has Samir's dad got a beard (4)?

Boy: Yes, he has.

Girl: Oh yes! I can see Samir now.

Post-listening question:

- Has Samir got glasses?

d) boots

d) look at

d) moustache

c) shoes

c) ear



Vocabulary Exercises

- 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. I can't see well, so I need
 - b) glasses a) classes
 - 2. My sister and I are twins, so weeach other. c) look like
 - b) like a) look
 - 3. My grandfather has got a big on his mouth. b) hair
 - a) beard 4. My little sister has got short hair, but she wants to have hair.
 - d) blond c) curly b) straight a) long
 - 5. Amr Diab is asinger. Everyone knows him.
 - d) weak c) short b) famous a) tall My mother has got straight hair, but my sister has hair.
 - d) long c) dark b) curly a) blond
 - 7. My homework is very but I can't do it.
 - d) free c) busy b) easy a) difficult
 - 8. My father has got a
 - d) curly hair c) glasses b) dark hair a) beard

 - Read and correct the underlined words:
 -) WB The second man has got short dark hair and a bread. ______ WB
 - 2. My sister has got street hair. WB 3. The second woman has got shorts blond hair.
 - 4. Most men have short her.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى

WB

WB

Unit

Language Exercises

1	Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a,	b, c	or	d:
---	--------	-----	---------	--------	------	----	------	----	----

1. My best friendshort dark hair.

a) has got b) have got c) got d) is

2. Has your father a moustache?

a) get b) getting c) got d) gets

3. My sisters long hair.

a) has b) have got c) has got d) are

4. The twin sisters in our class blue eyes.

a) has got b) got c) have got d) hasn't got

5. My brother is very young. Henot got a beard.

a) has b) hasn't c) is d) have

6. All my brothers and sisters dark curly hair. a) 's got b) 've got c) get d) got

7. My unclegot a son or a daughter.

a) has b) hasn't c) have d) haven't 8. A: Have you got long hair? - No, Igot short hair.

a) have b) haven't c) has d) hasn't

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ben have got a lot of books.

2. We has got an apple tree in the garden.

3. I can't open the door. I have got a key.

4. No, we have got a car.

5. Have you got a brother? Yes, I have got.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفه

2+2-8



SB pages 24 & 25, WB page 87

Vocabulary

Key Vocat	oulary	ā	فردات الرئيسيا	الم	
sports star	نجم رياضي	team	فريق	Europe	أوربا
runner	عداء/متسابق جرى	quite	إلى حد ما	footballer	لاعب كرة قدم
fan	معجب / مشجع	arm	ذراع -	big smile	ابتسامة كبيرة
	Sports			الرياضة	
football	كرة القدم	volleyball	الكرة الطائرة	basketball	كرة سلة
squash	الإسكواش	tennis	التنس	running	الجرى

Additional Vocabulary		ضافية	بفردات الإ	പി	
How tall?	كم طول؟	centimetre (cm)	سنتيمتر	present	مىية
metre (m)	متر	people	الناس	person	شنص
nicely	بشكل لطيف	baby bird	طائر صغير	plane	طائرة
camel	جمل	Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة		

Langu	iage	Expressions	ā	ت اللغوي	عبيرا	التع	
score	•	a goal	يحرز/يسجل هدفا			video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو
give	•	money	يعطي (يتبرع) بالمال	play		a sport	يلعب رياضة
talk	>	to fans	يتكلم مع المعجبين	watch	•	films	يشاهد أفلامًا
go at	>	900 km/h. ¾	تسير بسرعة ٩٠٠ كم/سا	jump	•	high	يقفز عالياً

99



2+2-

9

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
play for	يلعب ل	pick (ed) up	يلتقط
at home	في البيث	short for a footballer رة قدم	قصير بالنسبة للاعب ك

Words and Opposites			وعكسها	الكلمات	MOSSON INVASO		
fast	سريع	slow	بطىء	kind	عطوف/طيب	unkind	غير عطوف
poor	فقير	rich	غنى	friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
tall/long	طويل	short	قمير	strong	قوی	weak	ضعيف
funny	مضحك	unfunny	غير مضحك	big	ضخم/كبير	small	صغير

Conjugations of	Irregular Verb	ظمة	تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة		
Present		Past simple	Past participle		
give	gav يعطى	e III c	given		
build	buil يېنى		Ubuilt EO		
fly	flew يطير		flown		

Confu	sing Words		et for some			and the state of the	maracina
quite	تمامًا إلى حد ما	quiet	هادئ	star	نجم	stare	يحملق
fan	مشجع	van	شادنة	poor	فقير	pour	يسكب



Different people

Language Notes

للتعبير عن الأطوال والمسافات نستخدم الصفة آخر الجملة

- Mohamed Salah is 1.75 metres tall.
 - This mountain is 200 metres high.

(طویل) (طول رأسی) (طویل) (طول افقی) → long →

• She's got along hair.

My brother is tall.

4

- enjoy (V+ing) . He enjoys watching TV.
 - lenjoy playing video games.

ڪيفية وصف شعر شخص ما How to describe someone's hair

long short colour (2)

dark blond brown black

colour (2)

dark blond curly straight

- Mohamed Salah has gotlong, dark, curly hair.
- . She's got short, blond, straight hair.

Check Point

- Read and correct the underlined words:
- 1. Mohammed Salah is a sports stare. (......)
- 2. I've got straight long hair.
- 3. I'm twelve years age.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمسوس

Writing tips

لاحظ الاختصارات التالية:

Note that.

have = 've

has = 's

is = 's

plensy reconstri

Write it right

How to write about your favourite sports star. كيف تكتب عن نجمك المفضل؟

I like sports.

12+2-0

- My favourite sports star is (الاسم) .
- He / She plays (الرياضة).
- He / She is (very/quite) _____ (tall/short).
- He / She is (very/quite) (fast/strong).
- He / She has got (very/quite) (short/long/straight/curly) hair.
- He / She is (very/quite)(kind/friendly).
- He / She always talks to his fans.

Example

A sports star

I like sports. My favourite sports star is Ramy Ashour. He plays squash. He's quite tall. He's very strong. He's friendly. He's got quite long curly hair. He always talks to his fans.

Now, your turn:

عان دورك الأن:

Write a paragraph about your sports star.

n service	"My favourite sports star"	
I like sports		

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فطعوه

Different people

Reading



1. Look at the photo. What do you know about the sports star? SB page 24

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star(1). He plays football for a very good team(2) in Europe(3). He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile(5). He is quite short for a footballer. He is

1.75 metres tall⁽⁸⁾. In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt.

He also gives money to poor(10) people. He is very friendly(11) and he always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

نجم رياضي (1)

فريق (2)

الروبا (3)

عداء سريع (4)

ابتسامة كبيرة (5)

قصير إلى حد ما (6)

لاعب كرة قدم (7)

طويل (8)

(9) Jake

ظير (10)

(11) -

Listening

6. Listen and circle the correct words.

My favourite sport star is Doaa Elghobashy. She plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall, she is one hundred and eighty centimetres tall. She's strong and she's fast. She can jump very high. She's friendly, she always has a big smile.

Post-listening questions: - How tall is Doaa Elghobashy?





هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصحاص

الصف الأول الأعدادي مرتج الكرال التعليم كتاب Gem

c) wind

c) friendly

d) star

d) kind



a) moon

a) fast

Vocabulary Exercises

1	Choose the	correct answer	from a, b,	or d:
----------	------------	----------------	------------	-------

b) sky

b) weak

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. Mohamed Salah is a famous sports around the world.
- 2 My unelo is rich and helps assessed to be
- 2. My uncle is rich and helps poor people. He is very
- a) fines b) vans c) fans d) vets
- 4. In a football match, there are two
- a) teams b) times c) players d) matches
- 6. Ronaldo many goals every year.
- a) over b) by c) for d) of
- 8. The snake is 2 metres
- a) tall b) long c) high d) short
- 1. Moh Salah is quiet short.
 - 2. Rich people should help pour people.
 - 3. A giraffe is a short animal.
 - 4. Doaa El ghobashy is a sport star. (......)

104

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمعاس

الصف الاول الاعدادي (مراتع الكول التعايي) كتاب Gem

Different people



Can / Can't

		CS	n -	+ inf	ستطيع	ي			
• We	use	can	to	say	what	we	are	able	•

- to do: نستخدم (.can + inf) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء
- We can give money to help poor people.
- I can read English books.

- لا يستطيع .can't + inf
- We use cannot / can't to say what we are not able to do:
- نستخدم (.can't + inf) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على عمل شيء
- I can't pick up that box. My arms are weak.
- I can't swim well.

Question:

am

are

Can + Subject + inf.....?

Can you play the drums? - Yes, I can.

- No, she can't. Can Eman play chess?

able to + inf. can = is

she can swim = she's able to swim.

لاحظ:



d) running

d) wasn't

WB



Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or	O	Choose the	correct	answer	from	a, b,	c or	d
---	---	------------	---------	--------	------	-------	------	---

- 1. Can your brother fast?
 - a) runs b) ran
- 2. He is very busy. He take many holidays.
 - a) can't b) isn't c) hasn't
- 3. Salah lived in Italy for two years, so he speak Italian, too! WB

c) run

- a) can b) can't c) don't d) couldn't 4. She's only five, but sheread and write.
- b) can't a) can c) mustn't d) won't
- 5. She speak English well. She's very good at it. b) can't a) can
- c) mustn't d) won't 6. At school, you talk to your friends at break.
- a) can b) can't c) must
- d) mustn't 7. I'm sorry. I play football. I've got too much work.
- a) should b) must c) can't d) can
- 8. drive a car?
- a) He can b) He can't c) Can he d) Can
- Read and correct the underlined words:
- Omar can't rode a bike.
 - 2. Hanaa can sing?
 - 3. I'm a good swimmer. I can't swim well.
 - 4. Omar is busy, he can play football now.



2+2-

SB pages 26 & 27, WB page 88

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		، الرنيسية	فردات	الم
blog post	منشور في مدونة	drawing	الرسم	مرتان twice
history	التاريخ	paint/painting لتلوين	یلون/ا	website موقع انترنت
the past	الماضي	swimming a	السباد	online diary مفكرة على الإنترنت

Language Expressions		AA	اللغويا	برات	التعتا	
L	art	يدرس الرسم	go	•	swimming	يذهب للسباحة
do Þ	maths	يدرس الرياضيات				

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
happy to	سعيد بان	learn about	يتعلم عن
play with	يلعب مع	all about me	کل شیء عنی

Defi	nitions	التعريفات
blog	مدونة	a website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary.

Words and Opposites	الكلمات وعكسها	TO THE SECOND STATE OF
ممل	interesting	شيق

107

يحب (بشدة)

عند السؤال بهل في المضارع البسيط نستخدم:



Pro	esent	Past simple	Past participle
swim	يسبح/ يعوم	swam	swum
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

Language Notes

like + (v+ing/n) don't/doesn't like + (v+ing/n)

love (v+ing/n)

- like swimming.
- I don't like watching TV.
- ol love learning about the past.

Remember

Does she like playing basketball?

Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.

Do | you | + inf.?

Do they like watching TV?

Yes, they do. / No, they don't.



Lesson

Different people

Reading

Pre-reading question:

1. Where does Yunis live?

sport?

2. How many persons are there at Yunis family?

- نشور على مدونة الكثرونية (1)
- العاضى (2)
- (3)
- التاوين (4)
- مرتان (5)

SB page 26

معل (6)

All about me

1. Read the blog post(1) quickly. What is Yunis's favourite

Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark curly hair. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite school subject is history. I love learning about the past(2). I like maths and science, too. I do not like art because I am not very good at drawing(3) or painting(4).

I often play sport after school. My favourite sport is basketball. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming, too. I go swimming twice(5) a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games. I do not like watching TV. I think it is boring⁶⁶.







Post-reading questions:

- 1. What's Yunis's favourite sport?
- 2. How often does Yunis go swimming?



Lesson

Listening

Pre-listening question: - Who doesn't like swimming?

Listen to the game and write the order.

SB page 27

Speaker 1: Let's play a game. I'm looking at a girl. Who is it? Speaker 2: Does she like watching TV?

Speaker 1: No, she doesn't.

Speaker 2: Does she like swimming(1)?

Speaker 1: Yes, she does.

Speaker 2: It's Noha.

Speaker 1: Good! OK. Number 2. Who is it?

Speaker 2: Does she like swimming?

Speaker 1: Yes, she does. She loves swimming.

Speaker 2: Does she like playing basketball? Speaker 1: No, she doesn't.

Speaker 2: It's Dina.

Speaker 1: Well done! Three. Who is this?

Speaker 2: Does she like watching TV?

Speaker 1: Yes, she does.

Speaker 2: It's Eman. Speaker 1: No, it isn't.

Speaker 2: Does she like basketball?

Speaker 1: Yes, she does.

Speaker 2: It's Maya.

Speaker 1: Yes, OK. So the last one loves painting

(2), she likes watching TV, and she

doesn't like playing basketball.

Speaker 2: It's Eman.

Speaker 1: Yes, again.

Post-listening question: - what are your hobbies?

Dina

play/basketball

Noha

siwm watch/TV

Eman

play/basketaball

Maya watch/TV

play/basketball







110

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فيخصونها

Reading

Pre-reading question:

- What's Riham's favourite subject?

Lesson

Read the blogs and write the questions a-c in the correct place.

WB page 88

- a. Which sport do you like?
- b. What do you do in the evening?
- c. What is your favourite subject?



- a. Which sport do you like?
- 2 I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

c. What is your favourite subject?

1 My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.

b. What do you do in the evening?

3 I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories too.

Post-reading question:

- What sport does Riham like?



d) best

d) painting

d) fantastic



Vocabulary Exercises

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. I write a in my blog every day.
 - a) past b) post
 - 2. She is good at She likes art.
 - b) playing a) watching c) swimming
 - 3. The film was, so I didn't finish it and went to bed. a) good b) interesting c) boring

c) letter

- 4. History usually tells us about the
- a) future b) past c) present d) last
- 5. Sheswimming every Friday.
- a) goes b) does c) plays d) has 6. My favouriteis maths.
- a) sport b) food c) hobby d) subject
- I like learning about the past, so is my favourite subject.
- a) history b) art c) maths d) music
- 8. How often do you maths?
- a) make b) do c) play d) got
- Read and correct the underlined words:
- 1. I love learning at the past.
 - 2. They go swimming two a week.
 - 3. I do not like watching TV. I think it is interesting.

Speaking

1. Expressing likes and dislikes التعبير عما نحب وعما لا نحب



2. Asking about hobbies السؤال عن الهوايات



Speaking Exercise

Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogu	jues:
--	-------

1. Eman	: Do you like watching football matches?	
	. Do you like trace mig lootball tracelles.	

. They're boring.

2. Zainab

: No, he doesn't. Tamer

Enas

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيف

Lessons

General Exercises

sq 💮		0	•
4.	4	X.	<u>_</u>
_	_	-	-

1 Listen and answ	ver the following que	estions:	
1. Who is Mohame	ed Salah?		
2. Where does he	play?		
3. What kind of ha	ir has Salah got?		
2 Complete the f			
Nadeen : Do you	like sports?		
Nourhan : (1)			
Nadeen : What's	your (2)		sport?
Nourhan : Swimn	ning. I go swimming e	very day.	
Nourhan : My fav	ourite swimmer is Ran	ia Elwani. What about y	ou?
Nadeen : I love (4)		
3 Supply the mis	sing parts in the follo	owing two mini-dialog	ues:
1. Tamer : Has your	father got a beard?		
Ibrahim:		······································	
2. Khaled :		?	
Sayed: No, I like	swimming.		
4 Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b	o, c or d:	
1is h	air that grows above a	man's top lip.	SB
a) beard	b) hand	c) moustache	d) nose
2. I use	. when I read.		
a) glasses	b) beard	c) hair	d) classes

Œ

2+2-8

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والصواية

2+2.

Different people

3. Mohamed Salah is	very and	d he always talks to his	fans.
a) unkind	b) bored	c) afraid	d) friendly
4. The Queen of Engl	and is very	She has got many	houses. WB
a) rich	b) friendly	c) unfriendly	d) poor
5. Mohab	two brothers and o	ne sister.	
a) is	b) was	c) has got	d) does
6. She doesn't	watching TV.		
a) like	b) likes	c) liked	d) liking
7. My brother	play football w	ell. He always scores a l	ot of goals.
a) can not	b) can't	c) can	d) should
8. Different people	got differe	ent hobbies.	
a) do	b) does	c) has	d) have
Read and correct to	the underlined wo	rds:	
1. I'm not good at rur	nning. I'm very <u>fast</u> .		()
2. She has long, stree	t hair.		()
3. I have got one siste	er, but I <u>have</u> got an	y brothers.	()
4. Mr Waleed is quit to	hin.		()
6 Write a paragraph	of SIX (6) sentenc	es on:	
	"Your spo	rts star"	
•••••			



SB pages 28 & 29, WB pages 89 & 90

Vocabulary

Key Vocabula	ary	ىية	الم		
Wonderland	بلاد العجائب	adventure	مغامرة	sensible	عاقل / حكيم
strange	غريب	character	شخصية	busy	مشغول
angry	غاضب	scary	مخيف	heart	قلب
brave	وايث	island	جزيرة	exciting	مثير

Additional Voc	abulary	ā	المفردات الإضافية		
children's story	مّصة أطفال	place	مكان	main	رئيسى/أساسي
guess (ed)	يخمن	queen	ملكة	the country	الريف
nice	لطيف	information	معلومة/معلومات	storm	عاصفة
secret	سررالا	rabbit	ارنب	treasure	كنز

Prepositions			بف الجر	حرو	
tell about/told	يخبر عن	shout at	يصيح في	frightened of	خائف من
able to	قادر على	happy/unhap صوص	opy about غیر سعید ہذ	work on a boat	يعمل على قارب

Words a	nd Oppo	sites		عات وعكسها	ווצו	671 8 57	
brave	شجاع	coward	جبان	interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
late	متاذر	early	مبكر	clever	ماهر/ذكي	stupid	غبی



2+2.



تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs						
Prese	nt	Past simple	Past participle			
begin	يبدا	began	begun			
fall	يقع/ يسقط	fell	fallen			
understand	يفهم	understood	understood			
meet	يقابل	met	met			

Confusi	ng Words					Land Street	
scary	مخيف	scared	خالف	heart	قلب	hurt	يۇدى/يۇلم
garden	حديقة منزل	park	حديقة عامة	sensible	عاقل / حكيم	sensitive	حساس

Language Notes

Adjectives with (ed/ing): الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed / ing):

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تصف الكائن الحي الذي يشعر بهذه الصفة.

 He doesn't know what to do. He is bored. الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف الكائن الحي والشيء الذي يسبب هذه الصفة.

The film was very boring.

help + inf. / to + inf. يساعد

He helps her to find (find) different places.

اسم الكاتب + is by للتعبير عن كاتب القصة

My favourite book is by Jonathan Swift.

Check Point

Read and correct the underlined words:

This book is very bored.

2. I helped Ali doing his homework.

3. This film is quite scared.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمساس

minimaki itomorphis

Write it right

How to write about your favourite book. كيف تكتب عن كتابك المفضل؟

I like reading.

2+2-

- I like reading books by (اسم الكاتب).
- My favourite book is (اسم القصة / الكتاب).
- It's about a girl/boy called (الشخصية).
- The other characters are called (الشخصيات الأخرى بالقصة).
- He / She likes (الموايات).

Writing tips

A paragraph is a group of related sentences that present one topic or one idea.

الفقرة هي مجموعه الجمل التي تقدم موضوعا أو فكرة واحدة

Example

The book I like

I like reading. I like reading books by Lewis Carroll. My favourite book is Alice's adventures in Wonderland. It's about a girl called Alice. The other characters are called The White Rabbit, The Cheshire Cat and The Queen of Hearts. She likes adventures.

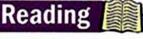
Now, your turn:

حان دورك الأن:

Write a paragraph about your favourite story

	"My favourite story"	
I like		

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوي



Pre-reading questions: 1. What kind of story is it? 2. Who is the main character?

1. Read the story and answer the questions.

SB page 28

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

by Lewis Carroll

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland(1) is a famous children's story. Alice's adventure (2) begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting, but it is a strange(3) place. She is a sensible(4) girl but she does not understand Wonderland. بلاد العبائب (1)

Alice is also brave(5) and clever(6). She meets a lot of interesting characters(7).

Alice often sees the White Rabbit. The White Rabbit is very busy - and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters.

The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary(9) person. She is always angry(10) and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not frightened(11) of her.







(2) **Julia**

غريب (3)

مالل (4)

شباع (5)

1(

M



نالد (11)

At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

Post-reading questions:

- 1. Which other characters are in the book?
- 2. Who has got a big smile?

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيق



Lesson

Reading |



Pre-reading question:

- Who wrote Gulliver's Travels?

1. Match the book reviews to the names of the books. Then write them. WB page 90



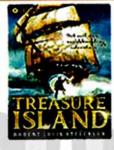
أن في الجملونات الخضراء

My favourite book is Anne of Green Gables by Lucy Maud Montgomery. It is about an orphan girl called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in the country. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures,



رحلات غوليفر

My favourite book is called Gulliver's Travels, by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book



جزيرة الكن

My favourite book

is Treasure Island. It is by Robert Louis Stevenson, It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very far from his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very exciting.

Post-reading question:

- Which story did you like most?

but Anne is a sensible

girl. It is a good book.

الجملونات الخضراء هو اسم مزرعة في القرن التاسم عشر







very much.



d) funny

d) busy

Vocabulary Exercises

1	Choose	the correct	answer	from	a, b, c	or d:
-			9 9 9			

- a) bored b) busy c) brave
- 2. Alice's in Wonderland is my favourite. a) characters b) adventures c) books d) lessons
- 3. My grandpa is very He advises us a lot.
- a) sensible b) stupid c) scary
- 4. The lions areanimals.

a) stupid

- a) coward b) strange c) funny d) scary
- He didn't do his homework, so the teacher is very

b) angry

- d) scared 6. The mother at her child when he played in the street.
- a) smiled b) shot c) shouted d) watched
- 7. Alice is the main in the story.

c) brave

- a) character b) person c) adventure d) book
- 8. The wife of the king is called the
 - a) servant b) queen c) person d) character
- Read and correct the underlined words:
- 1. Alice thinks that wonderland is interested.
 - 2. My aunt has a big smell.
 - 3. I love reading books with Lewis Carroll.



2+2.8



Key Vocabulary		سية	فردات الرنيد	الم	
appearance	مظمر	personality	شنصية	wheelchair	كرسى متحرك

Additional Vocabulary	ā	المفردات الإضافيا	
problem	مشكلة	cool	رانع
pool	حوض السباحة	together	معا/سویا
things	اشياء	classroom	حجرة الدراسه (الفصل)

Language Expressions	ā	رات اللغويا	التعبير	
open ▶ doors	يفتح الأبواب	do 🕨	things	يفعل أشياء
have > lunch	يتناول الغداء	make >	a poster	يعمل ملصقًا إعلانيًا

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
difficult for	صعب لـ	easy for	سحل لـ
different from	مختلف عن	travel around	يتجول

	Conjugations of Irregular	Verbs ā	تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظم
	Present	Past simple	Past participle
get	يحصل على	got	got



Language Notes

السؤال عن مظهر أو شكل شخص ما: : Asking about someone's appearance ماذا يشبه؟ ?look like (الفاعل) + look like الفاعل)

• What does your sister look like? She is short. She has got dark hair.

السؤال عن الصفات الشخصية لشخص ما: :Asking about someone's personality

ما صفته؟ ?like + (الفاعل) + like ما صفته • What is your teacher like?

Asking about someone's hobbies:

السؤال عن هوايات شخص ما: ماذا يحب أن يفعل؟ ?like doing + (الفاعل) + 3 الفاعل

• What do you like doing? I like playing football.

He's kind and friendly.

Joining words:

روابط (الإضافة / التناقض / السبب / النتيجة): and و(للمظف والإضافة)

 He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. but

· Basel can't run, but he's fast in his wheelchair.

because

I like Basel because he's a lot of fun.

80

Basel's a lot of fun, so I like him.

Check Point

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I can't go to school so I'm very ill.

2. After school, I have my lunch but do my homework.

3. It's hot today, because we'll stay home.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيق

ولكن (للتناقض)

لأن (للسبب)

لذلك (للنتيجة)

Write it right



How to write about a friend. ڪيف تڪتب عن صديق.

- My best friend is called (الاسم).
- He/She has got (مفته) hair.
- He/She has got (اللون) eyes.
- He/She is (منفاته).

2+2-8

- He/She likes (حواداته).
- I like him/her because he/she is a lot of fun.

Writing tips

Use joining words to connect ideas:

- He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together.
- Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!
- I like Basel because he is a lot of fun.

ستخدم كلمات الوصل للربط بين الكلمات

Example

My best friend

My best friend is called Fatma. She's got long straight hair. She's got brown eyes. She's very friendly. She likes reading and playing squash. I like her because she's a lot of fun.

Now, your turn:

حان دورك الأن:

Write a paragraph about your best friend

and the same of	"My best friend"
My best friend is called .	



العث الاول الاعدادي مرتج الكرال التعليم كتاب Gem

9

Lesson

Different people

Reading ____

Pre-reading question: - Why does Basel have a wheelchair?

 Read Fady's blog post. Why can't Fady and Basel always do the same things? SB page 30

Who's your best friend?



My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games. Those are my favourite hobbies, too!

کرسی متدرك (1)

(2) **(2)**

Basel has got a wheelchair(1) because he cannot walk. It is not easy for Basel to travel around school. I open doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the classroom.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a problem. We do a lot of things together (2). He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground. Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

I like Basel because he is a lot of. I am very happy that he is my friend. Fady, 12

Post-reading questions:

- 1. What does Basel like doing?
- 2. What is difficult for Basel?

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوفة



Life Skills

- 1. How are people in your life different from you?
- 2. Are differences important? Why/Why not?

Project

Make a poster about a famous person or someone from your family.

قم بعمل ملصق عن شخص مشهور أو شخص من عائلتك.

- 1. Find a photo or draw a picture of the person.
- 2. Make notes for your description. Answer these questions:
 - What does he/she look like?
 - What is he/she like?
 - What does he/she like doing?
 - What is interesting about him/her?
- 3. Write your description.





هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى



Vocabulary Exercises

	ect answer from a, video game		
a) making	b) doing	c) playing	d) going
2. I use a	because I cannot wa		
a) wheelchair	b) armchair	c) stool	d) chairman
3. We a lo	t of things together.		
a) give	b) watch	c) do	d) take
4. What is your fath	er? - He's f	riendly.	
a) look	b) like	c) look like	d) like look
5. She can't sing,	she can swin	n.	
a) and	b) so	c) but	d) because
6. We like each other	er we have	the same hobbies.	
a) because	b) but	c) and	d) so
7. What does your r	nother? - 9	she has got brown ey	es.
a) look	b) like	c) look like	d) like look
8 My coucin has an	4 a 6 mm		

Read and correct the underlined words:

b) person

- 1. I am very different for my brother.
 - 2. My teacher asked me to do a poster about a famous person.

c) personal

3. English isn't very difficult on a student who studies it hard.

d) personality

a) persons

2+2.

Lessons

General Exercises

	se the correct answer Iventures in Wonderland		
a) A children's sto		b) A men's book.	
c) A magazine.	,.	d) A newspaper.	
2. Who helps Alice	?		
a) A cow.	b) A rabbit.	c) A queen.	d) A cat.
3. What is Alice like	?		Carr real
a) Poor.		b) Weak and unl	
 c) Brave and clev 		d) Slow and sad.	•2
What kind of per	ople does she meet the		d) Dich
a) Boring.	b) Interesting.	c) Poor.	d) Rich.
2 Supply the miss	sing parts in the follow	ving two mini-dialo	gues:
The state of the s	loes your brother look I		
		?	
Soheir : I like p	laying basketball.		
Read the follow	ving, then answer the	questions:	
My name's Sam	nira. My best friend is co	alled Basmala. She ar	nd I study together.
Her home is only	a ten-minute walk from	my place. She is fun	iny and friendly. We
are always happy t	to be with each other. Sh	ne is always kind and l	helpful to me. When
I don't go to schoo	ol because I am ill, she co	omes to my place to a	ask about me. When
she misses school	, I ask about her. We also	play tennis togethe	r in the evenings.
A) Answer the follow	wing questions:	2	
1. Why do you thi	nk Samira likes Basmala		
2. What does the	underlined pronoun "W	e" refer to?	
What does Base	mala do when Samira d	oesn't go to school?	
	ect answer from a, b, c	or d:	
	amira are	a) students	d) teachers
a) sisters		c) students	d) teachers
 The underlined a) doesn't go to 	l word " <u>misses</u> " means o school b) doesn't stu	dy c) doesn't feel w	rell d) doesn't like

2+2.

9

Different people

A brave person	is happy to do somethi	ng	(V
a) fun	b) strange	c) dangerous	d) bad
A sensible perso	on		(A)
a) makes good	decisions	b) has no time	
c) is very tall		d) is unfriendly	
. What does you	best friend		1 20
a) look	b) love	c) make	d) do
. Something scar	ry makes you feel		<u> </u>
a) sad	b) bad	c) funny	d) frighten
. He isn't good at	t sports, he		-
a) as	b) when	c) because	d) but
. My sister Lina h	as got long hair	The state of the s	
a) so	b) because	c) but	d) and
. My sister doesn	't painting.		
a) likes	b) like	c) loves	d) loving
. What does you	r friend like		
a) doing	b) done	c) did	d) do
Read and corre	ect the underlined wo	rds:	
. Alice has lots o	f adventurous in wonde	erland.	(
	chairwheel because he		(
and the state of t	ooks with Anna Sewell.		(
. He isn't quite g			(
Write a paragr	aph of SIX (6) sentence	es on:	
	"Your best		

Unit 3 Review

Vocabulary

Vocabula	ary		بردات	المة	
features	ملامح	beard	لحية	moustache	شارب
short hair	شعر قصير	straight hair	شعر مستقيم	dark hair	شعر داکن
long hair	شعر طویل	curly hair	شعر مجعد	blond hair	شعر أشقر
glasses	نظارات	famous	مشعور	easy for	سطل لـ
busy	مشغول	look (ed) like	يشبه	friendly	ودود
sports star	نجم رياضي	team	فريق	Europe	أوربا
runner	عداء/ متسابق جری	strange	غرب	character	شنصية
fan 🗎	معجب/ مشجع	arm	ذراع	scary	مذيف
angry	غاضب	adventure	مغامرة	sensible	عاقل/حكيم

Language

1. Hav	e/Has got	يملك/لديه/عنده	
Statements	Negative	Questions	
- I have got short, curly hair. - Mazin has got a bike.	- They haven't got curly hair My dad hasn't got a beard.	- Have <u>you</u> got glasses? - Has <u>your father</u> got a beard?	
	1		



2+2-8



2. Can/Can't

يستطيع .can + inf

نستخدم (.can + inf) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء

- We can give money to help poor people.
- I can read English books.

can't + inf. لا يستطيع

• We use can to say what we are able • We use cannot / can't to say what we are not able to do:

نستخدم (.can't + inf) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على عمل شيء - I can't pick up that box. My arms are

weak.

I can't swim well.

Question:

Can + Subject + inf.?

Can you play the drums? Yes, I can.

- No, she can't. Can Eman play chess?

Speaking

1. Expressing likes and dislikes

- I like swimming.
- I love learning about the past.
- I don't like watching TV.

2. Asking about hobbies

- Do you listen to music?
 - Yes, I do.
- Does he like playing basketball?
 - No, he doesn't.

Unite

Cumulative Exercises

Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or False (F):

		F		T
1. Mr Sherif is Hamid's brother.	()	()
2. He has got short, straight hair.	_ ()	()
3. He has got glasses.	•	.)	()
4. He's got a moustache.	. ()	()
5. He's unkind.	()	()

Complete the following dialogue:

Nahla: Hi, Sama. What's your best friend called? Sama: Hello, Nahla. She's called Rana.

Nahla: (1)_____

Sama: She's tall and thin.

Nahla:(2)_____

Sama: She's friendly and funny. What about you?

Nahla:(3)....

Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. Sohayla: What do you like doing?

Soaad

2. Alaa

Omar : Yes, she has got curly hair.



Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah Hamed Mahrous Ghaly was born on 15th June, 1992. He was born in Nagrig, Basyoun in Al Gharbia. He is an Egyptian footballer who plays as a forward for Liverpool and the Egyptian team. He's one of the best players in the world. He's very fast. Salah started with Cairo club El Mokawloon in 2010. He went to Switzerland and helped the club to win. In 2014, he joined the Chelsea club and other teams. After that he went to many clubs like Serie A, Fiorentina and Roma. In 2017, Salah returned to play for Liverpool. He is known as Mo Salah. He took many prizes all over the world. He is very kind and helps poor people.

A)	Answei	the f	ollowi	ng qu	estions:

He has lots of fans.

- 1. What is Salah's job? _____ 2. Where was he born? _____
- 3. Why do you think Salah is very famous?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4. In 2010 he played for team.
 - d) Roma c) Serie A b) El Mokawloon a) Liverpool
- 5. Mo Salah isas he helps the poor.
 - d) kind b) strong c) brave a) fast
- 5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- WB d) tall c) long b) strong a) weak
 - 2. Howis the Cairo Tower? It is 187 metres. d) much b) tall c) many
 - a) long WB 3. A baby bird is very It cannot fly for many days.
 - d) kind c) strong b) poor a) weak

WB

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيف

العف الأول الأعدادي صلّع الكرالي التعليم كتاب Cem

2+2-8

9

Review __



Units 1, 2 & 3



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصواقع

Review

A

Reading



Pre-reading question:

- What is Nader's job?

1. Read the text. Write a title and circle the correct words.

2+2-8

This is my aunt. Her name's Amal. She's my mum's sister. She's got long, dark, curly hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.



SB page 32

This is my uncle. His name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall! He's a teacher and he's very clever.



Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children - a son and a daughter. They're my cousins. Their names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly.



Malak is two. She's got short, straight hair. She likes playing with her toys. She usually has a big smile. I think she's very funny.



Post-reading question:

- What does Malak like doing?





Lesson

Review A

Listening

Pre-listening question: - Does Shady like school?

2. Listen to Sahdy talking about his Day. Circle the correct words. SB page 33

Speaker: What time do you get up shady?

: I usually get up at quarter to 7 on a school Shady

day.

: How do you travel to school? Speaker

: I always walk to school with my brother. Shady

We never go by car.

: Do you like school? Speaker

: Yes, I do. My lessons are interesting and I see my friends. Shady

I always sit next to my best friend Hassan in lessons.

: And what do you do after school? Speaker

: I sometimes play sport. On Mondays I play football and Shady

Wednesdays I go swimming.

: Do you have any other hobbies? Do you play chess? Speaker

: No. I never play chess. I don't like it, but I listen to music and Shady

watch TV.

2. Listen and circle the correct words.

Hi! My name is Aya. My friends have got long straight hair, but I have got short curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite subject is Art. I love drawing. I am not very good at it, but I want to be. We have Art at quarter to eleven, after Math and before

English.

I have got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very clever.

Post-listening question: - What's Aya's favourite subject?

WB page 93

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمعلم

الصف الأول الأعدادي مرتج فلكراني التعليم كتاب Gem

2+2.

Prooffee

Based on Units 1, 2 & 3

Listen. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?		_		3) mod	ified
		F	1	li	
My favourite book is by Jonathan Swift.	()	()	
2. It is about a clever teacher.	()	()	
3. He works on a boat.	()	()	
4. All the people here are very short.	()	()	
5. I don't like the book.	()	()	
2 Listen again and answer the questions:					
1. What happened to the boat?					
2. How are the people?			1	h	
Complete the following dialogue:					VB
Dalida: This is a photo of my cousin.					
Reem : (1)	,				
Dalida : It's Fares					
Reem : (2)	,				
Dalida: He's 14 years old.					
Reem : (3)	,				7
Dalida: He loves fish with rice.					
Reem : (4)	,				
Dalida : He likes basketball.	1				
Supply the missing parts in the following mini-di	alogu	es:			VB
1. Alaa : What does your father look like?					
Rana :					
2. Teacher :	?				
Pupil : I like playing tennis.	•				
3. Father : Which hobbies do you like, Hend?					
Hend :					
-	•				

Review A

5) A: Read the following, then answer the questions:

SB

Hi Nagwa,

How are you? You want to know what my parents do at the weekend. My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. My brother always plays football when we go there! He is very good at football. What about you? What do you do at the weekend?

Best wishes.

Nesma

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1. Who wrote this email? 2. What does Nesma often do at the weekend? ...
- 3. Where does Nesma's family usually go when it is not very hot?
- B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 4. Nesma's mother works in a
 - d) sea b) school c) home a) hospital
 - ... works at the weekend. Nesma's dad
 - d) never c) always a) sometimes b) often
 - B: Read the following, then answer the questions:

139

Heidi is the story of an orphan girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese. Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend, Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy! But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of adventures in the city.

A) Answer the following questions:

- Where does Heidi's grandfather live?
 - 2. Where does Heidi sleep?
- 3. Why is Heidi sad?

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصواقع

الصف الأول الأعدادي مرتع الكول التعليم كتاب Gem

c) grandfather

c) mountain

c) milk

d) parents

d) cheese

d) daughter

d) hill

d) library

d) cycles

d) hers

d) was playing

d) no word

WB

WB

WB

WB

WB.

WB

WB

WB

WB

WB

WB

Practice 1

a) uncle

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d	B)	Choose	the correct	answer from	n a. b. c or d
--	----	--------	-------------	-------------	----------------

- 4. Heidi lives with her
- a) father b) mother
- 5. Heidi doesn't like the
- a) city b) goats
- 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

 - 1. Your sister is your parent's
 - b) sister c) brother 2. A/Anis at the top of a house.
 - a) orphan b) attic
 - 3. At break, I play games with my friends in the
 - a) playground b) bell c) classroom 4. The canoechildren to school and home again every day.
 - a) drives b) rides c) takes 5. Huda's grandmother is very kind. She lovesso much.
 - a) theirs b) her c) their
 - 6. Wechess or we go to the park. a) are playing b) played c) play
 - a) in b) at
 - 8. Salah lived in Italy for two years, so hespeak Italian, too! a) can b) can't c) is
 - 9. We both basketball at school.
 - a) go b) listen to c) do
 - 10. Habiba is a top in Africa. b) gymnastics a) gymnast
 - 11. My dad in Egypt. He works in London.

 - a) work b) works c) don't work

c) athletics

c) on

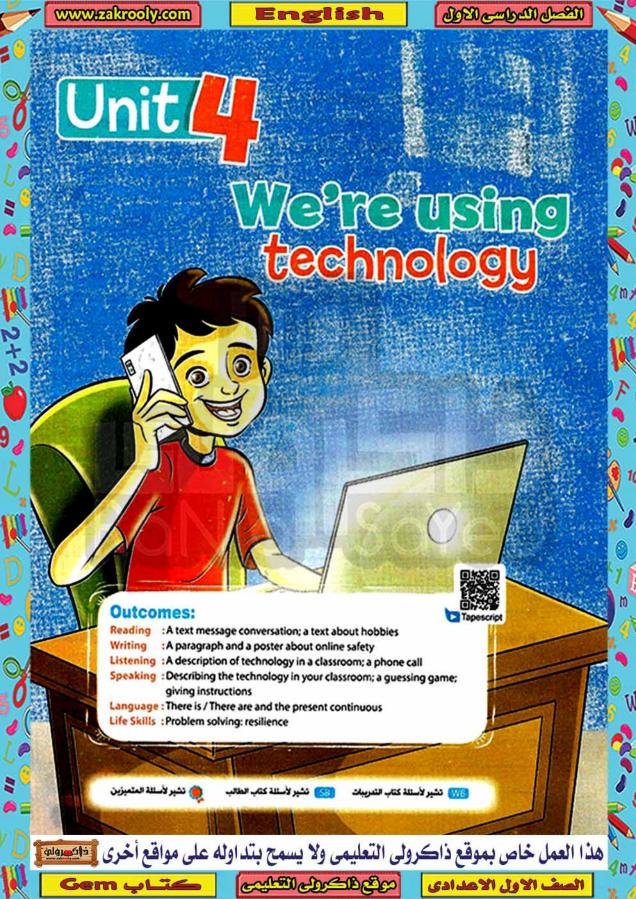
- d) physics

d) play

- d) doesn't work

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمساس

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيق





2+2.

SB pages 34 & 35, WB page 95



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية	
use (d)	يستخدم	printer	الطابعة
laptop computer	كمبيوتر محمول (لاب توب)	print (ed)	يطبع
MP3 player	مشفل اِم بی ثری	mouse	فأرة الكمبيوتر
whiteboard	السبورة البيضاء	tablet	الجماز اللوحي (تابلت)
technology	التكنولوجيا	phone charger	شادن المائف
mobile phone	هاتف محمول	charge (d)	يشحن

Language Expressions	التعبيرات التعويه	
		ستخدم الأحهزة اللوحية

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
charge with	يشدن ٻـ	in school	في المدرسة
in the classroom	في حجرة الدراسة	a picture of	صورة لـ

	Words	and Oppo	sites		الكلمات وعكسها		A China Head Com		
ſ	new	جديد	old	قديم	small	صغير	big	کبیر ع. Thigh	

143



Language Notes

- الاسم المركب من كلمتين عند جمعه نجمع الكلمة الثانية فقط
 - laptop computers / mobile phones.
 - أيضًا (تأتى في أخر الجملة) , too
 - There are two laptop computers, too.

ظروف المڪان

next to بجانب/بجوار behind المام in front of



بالقرب من near تحت near

Check Point

- Read and correct the underlined words:
 - 1. Mobiles phone are very useful.
 - 2. Omar likes sports. I like sports, two.
 - 3. There's a car in front off my house.

144

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمحسس

الصف الاول الاعدادي مرتع الكرال التعليم كتاب Gem

Writing tips

- استخدم عنواتا لتخبر الناس عن

موضوع فقرتك.

gmy

Use a heading to tell

people what your

paragraph is about.

Write it right

How to write a description of your classroom گیفیة الگتابة عن وصف الفصل

- My name's (الاسم)
- We often use (اسم الجماز) in school.
- There are (العدد) tablet computers in the classroom.
- There aren't any (اسم الجماز).
- There's a printer, too.
- We use it to print our homework.
- I've got a mobile phone but I don't use it at school.

on't use it at school.

Example

Classroom objects

My name's Samy. We often use tablets in school. There are four tablet computers in the classroom. There aren't any laptops. There's a printer, too. We use it to print our homework. I've got a mobile phone but I don't use it at school.

ui tuiii.		ورت الان:
Wi	rite a paragraph about your clas	ssroom
	"My classroom"	
	my crassroom	



Lesson

Reading

Pre-reading question:

- What is a printer used for?

1. Read Ziad's description of his classroom. Are these sentences true (T) or SB page 34 false (F)? Correct the false sentences.



الأجمزة اللهنية (1)

لُحِمْرَة الكمبيوتر المحمول (2)

فارة (3)

(4) **Latte**

يطبع (5)

هاتف معمول (6)

يشمن (7)

خلدن الماتف (8)

مشغل أغاني (9)



I am Ziad and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets(1) in school. There are two laptop computers(2) in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse(1). I don't

know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer (4), too. My friend, Omar, is printing (5) his homework.

I have got a mobile phone 60 but it's in my bag - we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk. He's charging his phone with a phone charger (8). And he's got a new MP3 player (9), it's small and blue. Can you see it?

Post reading question:

What's a phone charger used for?



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصويق

Lesson

We're using technology

Listening

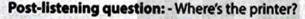
SB page 35

Pre-listening question: - Where's the laptop?

2. Listen to the description of the classroom.

Tick the correct picture.

There is a laptop computer on the table. Under the table there's a printer. There isn't an MP3 player but there are two mobile phones near the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse.









Vocabulary Exercises

Choose t	he correct answer	from a,	b, c or d	ŀ
----------	-------------------	---------	-----------	---

- 1. Ais a small computer that you can carry around.
 - a) mouse b) mobile c) laptop d) charger
- 2. Teachers use ain classrooms. They use special pens for it.
- a) whiteboard b) blackboard c) cardboard d) chess board 3. There is a mouse the laptop on the teacher's desk. WB
- a) near b) next c) in front d) under
- 4. I want to my homework to show it to the teacher.
- a) charge b) print c) use d) give

- a) mouse b) charger c) printer d) MP3 player
- 6. Most children like playing games on their
 - a) printers b) chargers c) tablets d) players

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Don't sit behind the television for too long.
- 2. We use the printer to move around the screen of the computer.
- My brother is charging his phone by his charger.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحسس



Language)

There is & There are 200

Affirmative:

. اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد + There is

There is a printer.

.... اسم جمع + There are

There are two laptops.

There is some water.

There are some boys here.

Negative:

. اسم مفرد (بعد) / اسم لا يعد + There isn't

 There isn't a charger. اسم جمع + There aren't

There aren't any tablets.

There isn't any water.

. There aren't any boys here.

Yes/No questions:

? ... اسم مفرد + Is there •

- Is there an MP3 player?

- Is there any water? ... اسم جمع + Are there : ... ?

- Are there any mobile phones?

- Are there any boys here?

- Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.

- Yes, there is.

- No, there isn't.

- Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.

- Yes, there are.

- No, there aren't.

Remember



some & any

- نستخدم (some) بمعنى بعض (في الجملة المثبتة) ويأتي بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعدر

- There are some apples in this dish.

-There is some rice in this dish.

- Would you like some tea?

- يمكن استخدامها أيضا في العرض والطلب:

- Can I have some books?

- نستخدم (any) بمعنى أي (في الجملة المنفية والسؤال بمعنى هل) ويأتي بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعد:

There aren't any tablets in my classroom.

- Are there any juice?

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمعلقة

Language Exercises

1. There	a bag on the table.		
a) were	b) aren't	c) is	d) are
2. There	any tablets in my cl	assroom.	
a) are	b) is	c) isn't	d) aren'
3 many	rooms in your hous	e?	
a) Is there		b) Are there	
c) There are		d) There is	
4a boy	behind the tree?	ويجطل	
a) Is there		b) Are there	
c) There are		d) There is	
5. There	some juice in the gl	ass.	
a) are	b) is	c) isn't	d) aren't
6. There	a lot of snow in the	mountains.	
a) are	b) is	c) does	d) do
7. Are there	printers in your	school?	
a) some	b) much	c) any	d) a lot
8. There	a lot of bread on the	table.	
a) are	b) do	c) does	d) is

Read and correct the underlined words:

 Are there a mouse? - Yes, there is. 	()	WB
2. Is there balls behind the tree? - Yes, there is.	()	WB

3. Is there any printers? - Yes, there are.



SB pages 36 & 37, WB page 96

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	100,243	المفردات الرئيسية	
write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني	send a photo	يرسل صورة
tap on the icon	يضغط على الأيقونة	click on the icon	ينقر على الأيقونة
3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	send a text message	يرسل رسالة نصية
look at a website	ينظر إلى موقع الإنترنت	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شنصية
make a video call	يقوم بإجراء مكالمة فيديو		

Additional Vocabulary	d and	المفردات الإضافيا	2
granddad	جد 📄	design (ed)	يممم الم
guess (ed)	يخمن	chess piece	قطعة شطرنج
information	معلومة/معلومات		

	التعبيرات اللغوية	ge Expressions	Language
يصمم أيقونة		an icon	design >
يرتب قطع الشطرنج		chess pieces	make >
يقوم بعمل الواجب		homework	
يدرس دراسات الكمبيوتر		computer stu	do 🕨



2+2



Prepositions	حروف الجر
at the moment	في هذه اللحظة
on a mobile phone	في المائف المحمول
look for	يبحث عن

Words and Opposites	ها	الكلمات وعكس	Marie and Marie Wood
online	عبر الإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت

COL	ijugations of irregular	تطريف الأفعال غير السند	
	Present	Past simple	Past participle
send	يرسل	sent	sent
mean	يعثى/يقصد	meant	meant
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Confusing Words		ords		COV		MANGEN SELECTION	
tap	ينقر على	tape	شريط	message	رسالة	massage	تدليك
write	يكتب	right	يمين	printer	طابعة	painter	رسام

Language Notes

lt's + adj.(صفة) to + inf

إنه لمن ... أن

. It's easy to use the laptop.

فعل مفرد + (اسم جمع) one of

One of my friends likes computer studies.

153

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمحسس



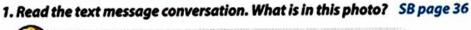
Lesson

Reading ____



Pre-reading question:

- Who is Adam sending text messages to?





- Hi, Granddad. It's Adam. What are you doing?
 - * I'm playing chess online. I'm winning at the moment!





- Are you using your new laptop?
- * Yes, it's quite easy to use. What are you doing?





- I'm doing my computer studies homework. I'm looking at websites for information about 3D printers(1).
- * What are your mum and Alia doing?





- They're taking selfies(2). I'm sending you one of their photos now.
- لطابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد (1)

يلتقط مور شفعية (2)





Oh yes! That's a great photo.



Post reading questions:

- 1. What game is Granddad playing online?
- 2. Where is Adam looking for information about 3D printers?







Choose the corre	ect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
		cousins in England.	W
a) write	b) make	c) send	d) take
2. I'd like to	a selfie in front of	the river.	(W
a) take	b) do	c) tap	d) make
3. Can you	. me a text message	when you arrive?	(W
a) send	b) do	c) take	d) make
4 at the w	ebsite and find som	ne information.	(W
a) Write	b) Click	c)Tap	d) Look
5. Where can I look	informatio	n about 3D printers	?
a) for	b) at	c) on	d) of
6. A blog is a/an	diary.		W
a) offline	b) online	c) inline	d) line
7. We the e	email then send it to	other people.	
a) catch	b) take	c) send	d) write
8. We can	on an icon on a mot	pile phone.	

-	CIICK	b) tap	c) tape	d) look
Re	ad and corr	rect the underlined w	ords:	

 Adam is sending <u>massages</u> to his friends. 	()
2. We tick on icons on the computer to open them.	()
3. I can write an email in my mobile phone.	()
4. I could sign an icon for my photos.	()



Usage

الاستخدام

Form

التكوين

الدالة

Language)

The present continuous tense:

زمن المضارع المستمر

I am playing football.

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening now:

- يعبر عن شيء يحدث الأن (وقت الكلام). . I am reading a story now.
- She is writing a letter at the moment.

am

He She is He is reading a book. verb + ing It

 They are swimming. We are They

- at the moment في هذه اللحظة Look! انظر Look! انظر watch out انصت في الوقت الحاضر at present - الأن now)
 - My grandfather is using his laptop now.
 - My uncle is writing an email at the moment. لاحــــــظ: 🚺 🔻 عند إضافة الـ (ing) للفعل:

Key words الكلمات

You

الأفعال المنتمية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

- (take taking) (come coming)
 - بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك واحد غالبًا ما نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing):
- (put putting) (cut cutting)
- (die dying) (lie lying) . (ying) ثمنع (ie) ثم نضع (ie) . (die dying) (lie lying) .

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصواقع

d) will

d) look

d) is sent

d) Are you

d) sleep

d) is read

d) are

WB

WB.

W8

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from	ma,b,cord:
--------------------------------	------------

1. I'm	chess online.		WB
a) play	b) plays	c) played	d) playing

c) looked

c) is sending

c) sleeps

c) is reading

c) is always

- 2. Fares doing his computer studies homework. a) is b) has c) does
- 3. They're at websites for information.
 - a) looking b) looks
- 4. She you a photo now.
 - a) sending b) sends
- 5. playing chess, Tarek! When did you learn it?
 - a) Do you b) You do c) You are

b) reads

- 6. I cannot ask her now. She
 - a) is sleep b) is sleeping
- 7. Salma at the moment.
 - a) read
- 8. She coming to class late.

 - a) always b) always is
- Read and correct the underlined words:
- 1. You're use my mobile phone!
 - 2. We sitting on the train now.
 - He is busy at the moment. He talk to a friend.
 - 4. Listen! The birds singing on the tree.



2+2.

SB pages 38 & 39, WB page 97

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	ā	المفردات الرئيسي	
wave (d)	يلوح بيده	sunny	مشمس
school uniform	زی مدرسی	programme	برنامج

	التغبيرات اللعوية	Expressions	age	Langu
يرتدى حذاء أسود		black shoes	•	wear
يخبز كيك		a cake	>	bake
يحضر مشروبنا		a drink	•	bring
يجلس تحت شجرة		under a tree	•	sit

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
write with	يكتب باستخدام	in the garden	مَّى الحديقة
put my hand up	أرفع يدى لأعلى	talk to	يتددث مع
smile at	يبتسم ل	want to	يريد أن

Conjuga	ر المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs				
Present					
sit	يجلس	sat	sat		
wear	یرتدی/یلبس	wore	worn		
bring	يحضر	brought	brought		

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمساس

3

Lesson

We're using technology

Listening



Pre-listening question:

- What's uncle Yasser doing?

1. Listen to the conversation between two sisters. What's Randa doing?

SB page 38

برنامع (1)

رتمة (2)

Randa: Hi, Sherifa! It's Randa.

Sherifa: Hello, Randa! Where are you?

Are you at home?

Randa: Yes. And uncle Yasser is here

with our cousins, Ola, Reem and Samira.

Sherifa: What's mum doing?

Randa : She's looking at a website. She wants to bake a cake.

Sherifa: Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the tablet?

Randa : No, she isn't. She is using the laptop. Uncle Yasser is

using the tablet. He's writing an email.

Sherifa: Is grandmother watching TV?

Randa: Yes, she is. It is her favourite program(1) on now of course.

Sherifa: What are Ola and Samira doing?

Randa : They are taking selfies in the garden.

Sherifa: Again?!! They are always taking selfies.

Randa : I know! Reem isn't taking a selfie. She is listening to music on

her Mp3 player. She is a good dancer(2).

Sherifa: What are you doing Randa?

Randa : I am talking to you!

Sherifa: Oh! Yes!

Post-listening question: - Who is listening to music?



Unit 🥌

Lesson

Reading

Pre-reading question:

- What does Fatma look like?

Read the puzzle. What is Leila doing?

SB page 39



Soha is not making a video call but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any technology.

Fatma has got curly hair. She is writing. Hala is using her mobile phone to send a text message.

Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone! She is taking a selfie.

Post-reading question:

- What's Leila doing?



Vocabulary Exercises

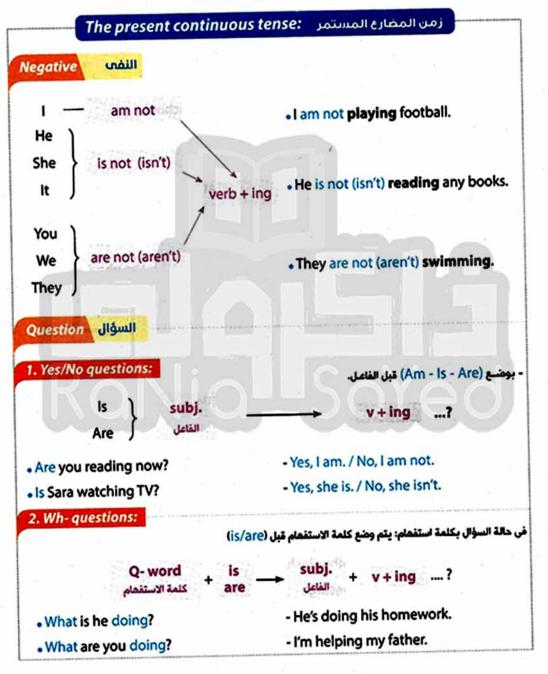
a) putting	b) leaving	c) making	d) waving
2. Student must we	ear their school	to go to school.	
a) uniforms	b) glasses	c) hats	d) sunglasse
3. I like writing	my pencil.		
a) with	b) on	c) at	d) in
3. At nine o'clock th	ere is aca	lled <i>Animal World</i> on	rv.
a) programme	b) subject	c) sport	d) food
4. Lots of young per	ople spend much tir	me talking t	he phone.
a) in	b) at	c) with	d) on
5. Mona is smiling	her mobile	phone.	
a) by	b) at	c) on	d) with
6. Take your umbrel	la, it's very	today.	
a) cool	b) cold	c) fine	d) sunny
7. Can you bring me	aplease		
a) drink	b) drinking	c) drinks	d) drank

2. Hala is doing a video call.

4. Marwa is writing a <u>next</u> message. (.....

Unit 🠗

Language



Language Exercises

1 taking a s	emer		
a) She is	b) Is she	c) She has	d) Has she
2 they usin	g a tablet at the mom	ent?	
a) Does	b) Is	c) Do	d) Are
3. A: Where's Bido? B:	Hea book	in his room.	
a) is reading	b) reads	c) reading	d) read
4. Maha and Samy	TV now.		
a) were watching	b) are watching	c) watched	d) watch
5 making a	video call at the mor	ment?	
a) Salma is	b) Are Salma	c) Is Salma	d) Salma ar
6. He writin	g a text message now		
a) doesn't	b) isn't	c) don't	d) aren't
7. Who wait	ing for you?		
a) is	b) is he	c) he is	d) has
8. What book	now?		
a) are you reading	b) you are reading	c) do you read	d) you read
Read and correct	the underlined word	ls:	
1. He doesn't sending	a text message.	()
2. Yes, she isn't makin	. .	i	,

161

3. Are you taking a selfie? - No, I am not writing an email.

4. Fatma is using any technology?



Speaking

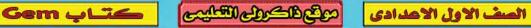
Ask and answer questions about your friend السؤال والإجابة عن صديق











Speaking Exercises

(1) Complete the following dialogue:

Hany: Hello, Hany! Who's your best friend?

Ramy : He's Kareem.

Hany : (1)_______ you sitting next to him?

Ramy : Yes, (2)_____

Hany : Is he wearing (3)______

Ramy : No, he isn't.

Hany: Is he writing with a pen or pencil?

Ramy : (4)______.

Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. Mariam: What are you doing, Noha?

Noha

2. Adel

Peter : Yes, I'm watching the match now.



Lessons 1,2 & 3

General Exercises

. What isn't Soha doing?	
3. What are you doing?	
4. What are the other students doing?	Land
Complete the following dialogue:	
Mother: Where are you, Sondos?	
Sondos: I'm here in my bedroom.	
Mother: (1)	
Sondos: I'm using my tablet.	
Mother: (2)	
Sondos: Yes, I am studying my lessons.	
Mother: What about your sister? (3)	
Sondos: No, she isn't. She's (4)	

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالمصولة

2. Mother :

Son

Com , 1 76

المنظم التعليم التعليم

: My father is watching TV now.

الصف الاول الاعدادي

2+2-8

ر و

We're using technology

	arging his phone with a p b) mouse	c) screen	d) printer
■ B 5 B 5	't got a	.,	
	b) screen	c) charger	d) keyboard
	a video call with m		
a) seeing	b) doing		d) making
4. You should	on the icon to ope		
a) tick	b) look	c) click	d) write
5. There	any notebooks on the d	lesk.	
a) are	b) is	c) aren't	d) isn't
6 a prir	nter in the classroom?		
a) There is	b) There are	c) Is there	d) Are there
7. Ali re			
	b) is	c) have	d) are
8. What are mum a	nd Tarek?		
a) do	b) did	c) doing	d) does
Read and correc	t the underlined words	SOY	
1. Is there some Mi	P3 players?		
2. My brother is do	-		(
	ooard in the classroom?		(
4. They are talking	selfies.		(
			10 0
write a paragra	ph of SIX (6) sentences "What your family are		
	What your family are		



SB pages 40 & 41, WB pages 96 & 97

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	The other states	المفردات الرئيسية	
lunchtime	وقت الغداء	boil (ed)	يغلى
nature	الطبيعة	insect	حشرة
stay (ed)	يبقى/ يقيم/ يظل	kettle	غلاية
popular	محبوب/شائع		

Additional Voc	abulary		بفردات الإضافية	പി	
life/lives	حياة	first	ięk	all the time	طوال الوقت
drop (ped)	يسقط	sky	السماء		

	211	لتعبيرات اللعوية		Expressions	age	Langu	
ندیه هوایة	a hobby	•	have	يقول أهلأ	hello	•	say
بمارس مواية	a hobby	>	do	يعمل دشای،	tea	•	make
يطير طائرة ورق	a kite	•	fly	ينمب هناك	there	•	go

	حروف الجر		Prepositions
ى اللاب توب	on a laptop	مَى المُسحة/وقت الغداء	at break/lunchtime
ي العالم	in the world	فنجان شای	a cup of tea
ى حديقة المنزل	in the garden	الكل حولنا	all around us
سورة لـ	a photo of	ينمب بالخارج	go outside
		في التليفون المحمول	on a mobile phone



2+2-8



Words and Opposites		ت وعكسها	الكلمان	ESPECTATION.			
hot	حار	cold	بارد	different to	مختلف عن	similar to	مشابه ل

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs					
Present		Past simple	Past participle		
put يضع		put	put		
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk		

1	Comus	ing words	457 294 Flotings St.			sep portu	2
	nature	الطبيعة	ملبیعی ماست	boil	يغلى	soil	cure aux

Language Notes

like being

- . I don't like being in the house.
- I like being in the garden.

Check Point

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. I love natural.
- 2. I don't like be home alone.

يحب أن يكون



Lesson

Reading ____

Pre-reading question:

- What technology does Wael use to play video games?

1. Listen and read. Who has got a mobile phone?

I love technology(1)! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

SB page 40

التكنولوجيا (1)

وقت الغداء (2)

يبلى/يليم (3)

الطبيعة (4)

حشرات (5)

studies! At break and lunchtime (2) I stay (3) in the classroom and I look at video game websites on my phone.

Can you guess my favourite lesson at school? Yes, it's computer

Wael, age 12

I love nature (4). I like walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects (5) all around us.

I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break. I go when it's very hot or cold!

I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

Mazin, aged 13

Post-reading questions:

- 1. What does Mazin like?
- 2. Is it good to have a hobby that you do all the time? Why / Why not?



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والصوال

2+2.

We're using technology

Life Skills

10/6/6	Vocabulary	Evereine E	
	vocabulary	Exercises	
Choose the corr	ect answer from a, l	o, c or d:	
 I eat my sandwic 	hes at		
a) extra time	b) part time	c) full time	d) lunchtime
2. I love	like watching trees	and birds.	
a) nature	b) future	c) furniture	d) culture
3. Football is the m	ostsport. A	Nost people like it.	
a) dangerous	b) boring	c) popular	d) bad
4. My mum uses th	e to make t	ea.	
a) glass	b) cup	c) kettle	d) tape
5. You have to	water to make	tea.	
a) boil	b) soil	c) drop	d) pour
6. Her father is not	sitting under the tree	e. He isa kito	2!
a) going	b) riding	c) driving	d) flying
7. My little sister ca	ntea.		
a) do	b) give	c) make	d) drop
3. You have to	a hobby to do.		1
a) try	b) make	c) do	d) have
Read and correc	t the underlined wo	ords:	
. What hobbies do	you make?		(
2. Ants are kinds of	birds.		(

Unit 🥌

Language)

Imperative: صيفة الأمر

Imperative:

- وتبدأ صيغة الأمر في الإثبات بالفعل في المصدر بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب. حدماء معاه

Go to the shop.

Open the door, please. / Please, open the door.

Huda, boil that water. / Boil that water, Huda.

Don't + inf.

- وتبدأ صيغة الأمر في النفي بـ (Don't) ثم الفعل في المصدر بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

c) Closed

c) Given

c) Didn't

c) comes

d) Closes

d) Give

d) Hadn't

d) coming

d) Do

Negative النفى

Affirmative

الإثبات

- Don't go to the shop

Don't open the door, please. / Please, don't open the door.

- Huda, don't boil that water. / Don't boil that water, Huda.

Language Exercises

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - the door when you go outside.
 b) Closing
 - 2. me your phone number so that I can call you.
 - a) Gives b) Gave
 - 3. swim in this lake.
 - a) Doesn't b) Don't
 - 4. Ali, here, please.
 - a) come b) came
 - 5.say unkind things to your friends.
 - 5. say unking things to your mends.
- a) Always b) Often c) Never
- Read and correct the underlined words:
 - 1. Doesn't come late for school.
 - 2. Ghada, said hello to your friend.
 - 3. Please, do that again. It's too bad.

110

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحسس

2+2



SB page 42, WB page 100



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		مفردات الرئيسية		
keep secret يحافظ على سرية	password	كلمة المرور/السر	stay safe	أبـق أمننا
personal information معلومات شخصية	heading	عنوان رئيسي	add (ed)	يضيف
زاهى/غنى بالألوان colourful	font	نوع خط الكتابة		

Additional	Vocabula	فية مية	بفردات الإضا	الم	
add (ed)	يضيف	telephone number	رقم التليفون	rest	باقى

Language	Expressions	ببيرات اللغويا	
make >	friends with یکون صداقة مع	keep >	your password secret حافظ على سرية كلمة المرور
answer >	a phone call يرد على مكالمة هاتفية	answer >	a video call يرد على مكالمة فيديو
look >	interesting نيدو شيقاً		7 m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	worried about	قلق على
go onto a website	يدخل على موقع الكتروني	example of	مثال لـ

171

Unit 🥝

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugations of Irregular Verbs					
Present		Past simple	Past participle		
keep	يحافظ على	kept	kept		
tell	يخبر	told	told		

Confusing	Words					7.7	
advice	نصيحة	advise (d)	ينصع	call	مكالمة	cool	رائع

Language Notes

Why don't you + inf.?

• Why don't you use an MP3 player?

لمُ لا....؟ وهي تستخدم لتقديم الاقتراح.



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصفيق

Write it right

How to write about staying safe when you use technology كيفية الكتابة عن بقائك أمنا عندما تستخدم التكنولوجيا

Example

How to stay safe online

Keep your password secret. Don't tell anyone about it. Don't make friends with people you don't know. Don't tell people your personal information like your telephone number. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher.



Now, your turn:

حان دورك الأن:

Write a paragrap	h about l	how to stay	safe online
------------------	-----------	-------------	-------------

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمسلس



2+2-8

Vocabulary Exercises

	safe online.	a) ata	d) ctay
a) sleep	b) stand	c) sit	d) stay
2. A is a w	ord or numbers you u	se to go onto a web:	site.
a) keyword	b) password	c) crossword	d) secret wor
3. A is son	nething you do not wa	ant to tell people.	W
a) truth	b) lie	c) secret	d) story
4. Computers and n	nobile phones are exa	mples of	W
a) technology	b) nature	c) farming	d) subjects
5. Don't tell anyone	about your	information.	
a) character	b) personality	c) personal	d) person
6. Last year I went t	o a new school and	friends with	lots of people the
a) made	b) did	c) took	d) asked
7. The telephone is	ringing. Please,	it.	
a) ask	b) use	c) take	d) answer
8. My father always	gives me to	stay safe.	
a) practice	b) practise	c) advice	d) advise
Read and correc	t the underlined wo	rds:	
1 You shouldn't te	ll anyone your crosswo	ord.	(



Lessons 4,5 & 6

General Exercises

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. What is the teacher's name?
 - a) Mr Sherief.
 - b) Mr Medhat.
- Mr Waleed. d) Mr Ali.
- 2. When do you often have computer studies?
 - a) On Sundays.

b) On Mondays.

c) On Saturdays.

- d) On Thursdays.
- 3. What did the teacher tell you about?
 - a) Staying healthy.

b) Writing stories.

c) Sending an email.

- d) Staying safe online.
- 4. What information shouldn't you tell anyone about?
 - a) Personal.
- b) Public.
- c) General.
- d) School.
- Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:
- 1. Father : What technology do you use in school?

Son

2. Hadeer

: I'm watching a football match. Amany

Read the following, then answer the questions:

The internet is a great way to talk to your friends and learn new things. But it's also important to stay safe. There are a few ways you can help make sure you're not in danger when you use the internet. Use strong passwords that are hard for others to guess, using letters, numbers and symbols (like £, \$, &, !, etc.). Keep passwords to yourself and change them regularly. If somebody you don't know adds you as a friend, don't say yes quickly. Don't share personal information like your address or phone number with somebody you don't know. If you have an email from a stranger, think before clicking on it.

- A) Answer the following questions:
 - How can you make the passwords hard to guess?
 - 2. What do you do if someone, you don't know, asks you to give him your phone number?
 - 3. What do you think of the internet?

Uni	

2+2.

9

b) don't know	c) know	d) see
·		
b) weak	c) dangerous	d) bad
answer from a, b, c	or d:	
b) famous	c) secret	d) clean
	nternet.	
		d) ask
people yo	ou don't know online.	•
		d) in
		d) hot
		FEE
-		d) Putting
		d) sleep
		d) were
		المم
b) has	c) are	d) is
e underlined word		
		,
. T		(
•		(
		(
of SIX (6) sentences	on:	
"How to stay		
	b) weak answer from a, b, c b) famous safe on the i b) say people yo b) with drink in the w b) healthy vater in the cup to m b) Puts now. He b) is sleeping ratching a football m b) are s of flowers and inse b) has e underlined word people you don't ke t my mobile phone. ida. r school.	b) weak c) dangerous answer from a, b, c or d: b) famous c) secret safe on the internet. b) say c) tell people you don't know online. b) with c) by drink in the world! b) healthy c) unknown vater in the cup to make tea. b) Puts c) To put now. He now. He b) is sleeping c) sleeps ratching a football match right now. b) are c) was s of flowers and insects in a big park. b) has c) are e underlined words: people you don't know. t my mobile phone. ida. r school.





2+2.

We're using technology

Unit 4 Review



Vocabulary	فردات	الم
mouse فأرة الكمبيوتر	technology التكنولوجيا	tablet (تابلت) tablet
laptop computer کمبیوتر محمول (لاب توب)	mobile phone تليفون محمول	phone charger شاحن المائف
MP3 player مشغل اِم بي ثرى	printer الطابعة	charge (d) يشدن
whiteboard السبورة البيضاء	print (ed) يطبع	click on the icon ینقر علی الأیقونة
write an email یکتب رسالة برید اِلکترونی	look at a website ينظر إلى موقع الإنترنت	send a text message پرسل رسالة نصية
tap on the icon يضغط على الأيقونة	make a video call یقوم باجرا، مکالمة فیدیو	take a selfie يلتقط مورة شنصية
يحافظ على سرية keep secret	send a photo يرسل صورة	محبوب/ شائع popular
wave (d) يلوح بيده	kettle غلاية	boil (ed) يلغى
وقت الغداء lunchtime	password كلمة المرور/ السر	personal information معلومات شخصية
nature الطبيعة	insect مشرة	stay safe أبـق أمتنا

Statements



Language)

1. There is/There are 200 Questions Negative

- There is a printer.	- There aren't any tablets.	- Is there an MP3 player?
- There are some	- There isn't a charger.	- Are there any mobile phones?
boys here.		

Statements	Negative	Questions
- She is writing an email now I'm doing my homework.	-They aren't studying I'm not eating now.	- What are you doing now? - Is Bido watching TV now?

3. Imperative	صيفة الأمر
Statements	Negative
- Go to the shop. - Huda, boil that water.	- Don't boil that water, Huda. - Please, don't open the door.

Speaking |

Ask and answer questions about your friend

- Are you sitting next to your best friend?
 - Yes, I am.
- Is she writing with a pen or pencil?
 - She is writing with a pencil.
- What are they doing?
 - They are watching TV.



Unit

Cumulative Exercises

Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or False (F): We often use tablets in school. 2. There are four laptop computers in the classroom. 3. My friend Omar is printing his homework. 4. We use our phones in the classroom. Complete the following dialogue: Judy: Hi Leila. Where are you? Leila: Hi Judy. I'm in the park with my family. Judy: (1)_____ Leila: I'm sitting under a tree. It's very sunny. Judy: Are your brothers sitting, too? Judy: (3)______ playing football with them? Leila: No, he isn't. My dad isn't here. He's working today. But my Uncle Hassan is playing football! Judy: (4)_____ Leila: Er, wait ... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water. Thanks Mum! Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues: WB 1. Ahmed : Are you writing an email?

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوفة

: No, he isn't. My father never works on Saturdays.

:_____

Abdu

Dina

2. Sally

Unit 4

Read the following, then answer the questions:

All work and no play makes your life dull. So you need fun activities, too. Hobbies are activities that are fun. Your hobby can be useful, too. There are many kinds of hobbies. Hobbies will help you use your free time well. Music, reading, story writing, sports and painting may all be hobbies.

I love to paint. It is my hobby. I paint with water colours. I like to paint beautiful nature. When we go on holidays to different places like mountains, desert areas, rivers or the countryside, I always take my art material with me. I like to sit and paint. I think my hobby is useful to me. I keep all my paintings carefully in my bedroom. I also like making paintings with water colours. Water colours are quick to dry.

A) /	Answer	the	ol	low	ing	quest	ions:
------	--------	-----	----	-----	-----	-------	-------

- Give a tittle for this passage. 2. Where do you keep your paintings?
 - 3. What are the kinds of hobbies?
- B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5. The writer likes to paint

- 4. The underlined word "dull" means
- a) fantastic b) interesting c) boring
- a) places b) houses c) people d) nature
- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- Don't photos to people you don't know. a) make b) send c) see d) buy
 - 2. My friends would like toa selfie by the Pyramids.
 - a) make b) take c) watch d) print
 -on the icon on your laptop.
 - b) Write a) Click c) Make d) Send

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوي العف الأول الأعدادي مرتع الكرال التعليم المناب Gem

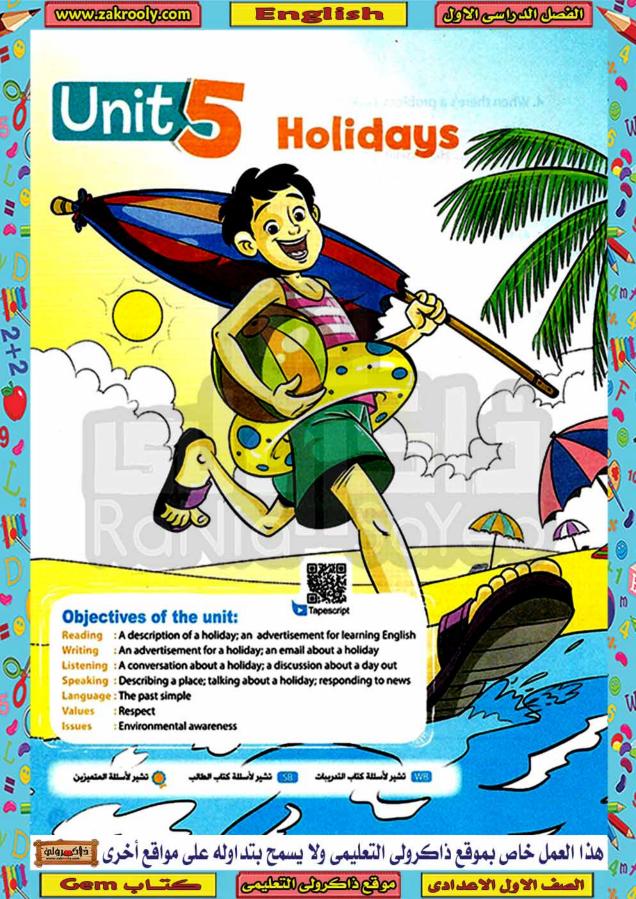
d) good

WB

2+2.

We're using technology

. When there's a	problem, I ask my teach	er help).
a) in	b) at	c) for	d) on
H	ala making a video call?		SB
a) Is	b) Has	c) Are	d) Does
. Are you	next to your best	friend?	SB
a) sits	b) sat	c) sitting	d) sit
' to	o people you know onlin	e.	WB.
a) Talk	b) Talks	c) Don't talk	d) Doesn't talk
k ta	blets in your classroom?		
a) Is there	b) Are there	c) There are	d) There is
Read and corr	ect the underlined wor	ds:	
. We use the prin	nter to charge a phone o	r a laptop.	()
. A blog is an off			()
. First, taps the r			() WB
. Grandma is rea			() WB
Weign			N/O
write a paragi	raph of SIX (6) sentence	s on;	
	"How you stay	safe online"	
••••••	•••••	•••••••	





2+2

SB pages 44&45, WB page 102

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية				
holiday	beach اجازة		شاطئ	jungle	أدغال/غابة كثيفة	
sea	بحر	lake	بحيرة	waterfall	شلال	
desert	صدراء	mountain	جبل	forest	غابة (ذات أشجار طويلة)	
river	تمر	cave	كمف	sand	رمل	
rock	صذرة	make a sandcas	stle		يصنع قلعة رملية	

Additional Vocabulary	DANZ PAS	المفردات الإضافية	
country/countries	دولة/بلد	map	خريطة
dark place	مكان مظلم	Djara cave	كهف الجارة
Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	Egypt	ممر

Lang	guage Expressions	التعبيرات اللغوية	
gues	s >the place		يذمن المكان
go	▶in the cave		يدخل في الكهف

Prepositions		حروف الجر		
in the trees	فى الأشجار	with a lot of sand	ذو كثير من الرمال	
lots of	کثیر من			

183

Unit 🎳

Confusing Words		Ising Words					
desert	الصدراء	dessert	حلوى	lake	بحيرة	like	يحب
beach	شاطئ	peach	خوخ	sea	بحر	see	یری

Language Notes

would ('d) like to + inf.

يود أن

- Where would you like to go?
- I'd like to go to the beach.

Listening

Pre-listening question: - Are there monkeys in the trees?

3. Listen to Taha and his sister playing a game. Can you guess the places? **Lesson**

SB page 45

Taha: Guess where I'm, Sara. I'm in a place where there are lots of trees.

Sara : Are there monkeys in the trees?

Taha: No. It's very dark and quiet.

My turn

Sara: I'm in a place with a lot of sand.

Taha: I know. You're in the desert.

Sara : No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert. There's a lot of water in my place.

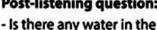
Taha: No, I'm in a dark place. When I speak,

I can hear my words again and again

Listen, "Hello!"

Post-listening question:

- Is there any water in the desert?



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحافقة

Vocabulary Exercises

 People like going to thein sumn 	
a) beach	b) mountain
c) cave	d) lake
2. Ais a place with lots of trees and	l dangerous animals.
a) sea	b) cave
c) mountain	d) jungle
3. Ais a place where water falls from	m a high place.
a) cave	b) forest
c) waterwheel	d) waterfall
4. Ais a hole in the mountain.	
a) lake	b) cave
c) river	d) forest
5. Children like to play on theon th	ne beach.
a) rock	b) cave
c) sand	d) soil
6. Ais a place where there is no v	vater or trees. There is lots of ye
sand.	
a) hill	b) jungle
c) forest	d) desert
7. We never go to school on	
a) Sundays	b) Mondays
c) holidays	d) Tuesdays
8. Children like to build on the bea	ch.
a) rocks	b) caves
c) sandcastles	d) waterfalls
Read and correct the underlined words:	
Egypt is a great city.	(
2. I like going swimming in the see in Alex.	1

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى المعصفة

3. Where would you like go?



SB pages 46&47, WB page 103

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	d		
climb a mountain	يتسلق جبلا	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة
have a picnic	يقوم بنزمة	go into a cave	يدخل كحفنا
see a camel	يشاهد جملا	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
visit a family	يزور أسرة	swim in the lake	يسبح في البحيرة
eat delicious food	يأكل طعامنا لذيذا	frightened of	خائف من
play games	يلعب ألعابنا		

Additional Vo	cabulary	مية	JI .		
activities	أنشطة	weather	طقس	warm	دافئ
Hurghada	الغردقة	Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	museum	متدف
summer	الصيف	fantastic	رائع	Marrakesh مراکش (بالمغرب)	
Siwa	سيوة	hotel	فندق		

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
far from	بعيداً عن	get into	يدخل في

Words and Opposites			الكلمات وعكسها			
far from	بعيد عن	near to	قريب من	get into	يدخل في	go out of يخرج من



2+2



Conjugations	of Irregula	نصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Verbs			
Present		Past simple	Past participle		
have	يمثلك	had	had		
see	یری	saw	seen		
swim	يسبح/يعوم	swam	swum		
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten		
sleep	ينام	slept	slept		
make	يصنع	made	made		
ride	يركب	rode	ridden		
go	ينمب	went	gone		
am/is/are	يكون	was/were	been		
Confusing Words) Consympton	oreo		

Contusing	words	New York	of may have			1000	
game	لعبة	gem	جوهرة	food	طعام	foot	قىم
lake	بحيرة	leak	تسرب	tent	خيمة	tint	لون

Language Notes

when

عندما

- When I was eight, I went to Siwa.
- Last summer, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach.

187

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمعسوس

Write it right

How to write about your last weekend كيف تكتب عن إجازاتك السابقة؟

- Last weekend, I went to (المكان)
- I went with (الشخص / الأشخاص)
- We went by (الوسيلة)
- (الأنشطة التي قمتم بها) We-

2+2-8

- We didn't (الأنشطة التي لم نقم بما)
- It was a fantastic holiday.

Writing tips

Review your paragraph for spelling and grammar mistakes.

راجع الأخطاء الاملائية وأخطاء القواعد في

Example

Your holiday

Last weekend, I went to Hurghada. I went with my family. We went by bus. We swam in the sea and made sandcastles. We didn't see camels there. It was a fantastic holiday.

Now, your turn:

حان دورك الأن:

Write a paragraph about your last weekend.

ast weekend, I we	nt to	 	

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمعلقة

الصف الأول الأعدادي مرتج الكرال التعليم كتاب Gem

SB page 46

Holidays

Reading

Pre-reading question:

- Why didn't Mariam want to go into the cave?

- يصنع قلعة رملية (1)
- يعخل الكعف (2)
- يلوم بنزهة (3)
- بأكل طعامنا لنينًا (4)
- يلعب ألعاب (5)
- يركب الدراجة (6)
- يسبح في البحيرة (7)
- يتسلق جبلًا (8)
- يثلمد البمال (9)
- ينام في خيمة (10)

My holiday photos

3. Look and read. Match the photos with the descriptions:

1. Last summer, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada.





Mariam made this sandcastle(1). There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave (2) because she was frightened!

In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic (3) in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food (4). Then we played games (5) and Ali rode his bike (6).





3. When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake 7, and climbed the mountain (8). We saw camels (9) and slept in in a tent (10) in the desert. It was my favourite holiday!





Post-reading question:

- When did they visit their uncle?





Vocabulary Exercises

- (1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. We went on a trip in the desert and slept in
 - a) rocks b) tents c) sandcastles d) towers
 - 2. My mother is a very good cook. We always eatfood from her hands.
 - a) polluted b) boring d) delicious c) bad
 - 3. My familya picnic in Al Azhar Park yesterday.
 - b) did a) made d) had
 - c) took 4. My brother bought a bike toit.
 - b) drive a) ride
 - d) climb c) see 5. I would like to in the lake.
 - b) swim a) climb
 - d) go c) visit
 - 6. When I see snakes, I feel I don't like them.
 - a) pleased b) happy
 - c) frightened d) glad 7. People go to the beach in when it's very hot.
 - b) spring
 - a) winter d) summer c) fall
 - 8. We can't sleep in
 - b) houses a) tents
 - d) lakes c) beds
- Read and correct the underlined words:
 - 1. Children like playing gems.
 - 2. We go to the desert to swim every day.
 - 3. Making a mountain is sometimes dangerous.
 - 4. We went to Siwa and swam in the leak.



زمن الماضى البسيط Past simple

Usage الاستخداه

- We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past. نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط لنتحدث عن فعل حدث في الماضي وانتمى أو حدثين
 - I visited my uncle yesterday.

1. Verb "to be"

الاثيات Affirmantive frightened. He hungry. She a nurse. It big.

We early. were at school. You

They quiet. النفي Negative

sad.

He thirsty. wasn't She a teacher.

small. It

We late.

You weren't at home.

They noisy. weren't =

wasn't =

was not

were not

السؤال بمعنى هل Yes/ No Questions

Affirmative They were happy. She was frightened.

Question Were they happy? Was she frightened?



2. Regular & Irregular verbs

. + التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject

- I arrived late for school.

Form التكوين

You bought a new notebook.

🛂 على تنقسم الأفعال إلى قسمين:

	Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة (d / ed / jed) للمصدر				افعال غیر منتظمة Irregular verbs تحفظ کما هی فلیس لما قاعدة محددة eat • ate		
_	live	•	lived	eat	•	ate	
	visit	>	visited	buy	•	bought	
	study	•	studied	take	•	took	

رديد الأخير قبل إضافة (ied / ed / d) للفعل المنتظم ومتى نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ed):

2. d

يضاف حرف (d) للفعـل المنتمى بحرف الـ (e)

1.

(arrive - arrived)

(live - lived)

إذا لـم ينتــه الفعـل بالنمايات السابقة نضيف (ed)

(watch - watched)

(play - played)

ied

إذا انتمى الفعل بـ (y) قبلها ساكن نحذفها ونضع (ied)

(study - studied) (carry - carried)

double letter + ed

قبل إضافة (ed) إذا كان الفعل ينتمى بحرف ساكن

لاحظ أننا نضاعف الحرف الأخير

يسبقه حرف متحرك (واحد فقط)

(prefer - preferred) (stop - stopped)

Read and correct the underlined word:

- I study my lessons yesterday.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفه

کتاب Gem

الصف الاول الاعدادي مراتع الكرال التعليم

Key words

الدالة

الكلمات

- في الماضي in the past - منذ ago - منذ in the past - أمس yesterday - أمس

(in 2010) سنة في الماضي + in

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Tarek travelled to Aswan next Friday. (________)

نضع (didn't) بين الفاعل والمصدر.

Negative

النفي

Subject ▶ did not (didn't) + Inf. + - I did not arrive late for school. - You didn't buy a new notebook.

Read and correct the underlined word:

- Ali doesn't meet his friend yesterday.

Language

Pre-reading question: - Whene did they go last summer?

2. Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 103



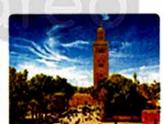
Last summer, my family had a fantastic holiday in Morocco. We visited a big beach and then we slept in a nice hotel. We didn't swim in the sea. It wasn't very warm! But I rode on



Write soon.

Hana

Post-reading question: - What did they do in Morocco?



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصحاص

WB

WB.



Language Exercises

0	Choose the correct	answer	from a,	b, cor
W	Choose the correct	answer	trom a,	D, CO

- 1. Last summer, my family a fantastic holiday in Morocco.
 - a) have b) had c) has d) are having
- We visited a big beach and then wein a nice hotel.
- a) sleeps b) are sleeping c) sleep d) slept 3. We in the sea. It was not very warm!
- a) didn't swim b) don't swim c) aren't swimming d) weren't swum
- 4. She didn't to the beach yesterday.
- a) gone b) went d) go c) goes
- 5. They at the park yesterday. They were at the cinema. a) didn't b) was c) wasn't d) weren't
- 6. Isome animals in the zoo three days ago.
- a) see b) seen c) didn't see d) saw
- 7. He at home last night.
- a) didn't b) doesn't c) wasn't d) hasn't 8. We went to the beach and in the sea.
- a) swam b) swum c) swim d) swims
- Read and correct the underlined words:
- 1. He didn't at school yesterday.
 - 2. We went on a picnic next week.
 - 3. Sayed didn't swam in the lake at Siwa.

 - 4. She visited her aunt three days before.



2+2.

SB pages 48&49, WB page 104

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary			فردات الرئيسية	الما	
camp (ed)	يعسكر/يخيم	castle	قلعة	dolphin	دولفين
holiday flat	شقه العطلة	hotel	فندق	sea animal	حیوان بحری
souvenir	هدية تذكارية	view	منظر طبيعي	flag	علم

Language Expressions		التعبيرات التعوية	
have > a great holiday	يقضى لدازة عظيمة	stay > in a hotel	ىقىم فى فندق

Prepositions			ف الجر	حرو	-
go on holiday	ينصب في إجازة	get to	يصل إلى	at the market	في السوق
by the lake	بجوار البحيرة	for dinner	على العشاء	from the past	من الماضي

Conjugation	is of Irregula	r Verbs date	تصريف الافعال غير المنتظمة	
Presen	it	Past simple	Past participle	
buy	يشثرى	bought	bought	
do/does	يفعل	did	done	

Definitions		التعريفات
camp	يخيم/يعسكر	sleep for a time in a tent
castle	قلعة	a big, strong building from the past
dolphin	دلفين	a friendly sea animal
holiday flat	شقة العطلة	a place to stay for a holiday
souvenir	هدية تذكارية	something you buy to remember a holiday
view	منظر طبيعي	what you can see from a place

195

SB page 48

الأردن (2)

منظر (4)

دولنين (5) تلعة (6)

مىية تذكارية (7)

علم (8)

إجلاة/ عطلة (1)

شقة العطلة (3)



Lesson

Listening

Pre-listening question:

Did Yunis enjoy his holiday?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.

Yunis: Hi, Hatem. It was great. Thanks.

Hatem: Hi, Younis. How was your holiday(1)?

Hatem : Where did you go?

Yunis : I went to Jordan (2) by plane.

Hatem: Wow! Did you visit your family there?

Yunis : No. We stayed in a holiday flat (3) by the beach. We had

a wonderful view⁽⁴⁾ from the windows. Every morning,

I saw dolphins (5) in the sea.

Hatem: Did you swim in the sea?

Yunis: Yes we did. We swam every day. We

used a map. I read a book about

Jordan and we visited a lot of famous places. We went to this old

castle⁽⁶⁾. Look, here's a picture of it on my phone.

Hatem: How did you get to the castle?

Yunis : We climbed up the mountain?

Hatem : Did you buy any souvenirs?

Yunis : Yes, I did. I bought this small souvenir (7) for you.

Hatem : Oh! How interesting! Egypt's flag (8) is also red, white and black.

Yunis : Jordan's flag has another colour, green, too. Thanks , Younis.

Post-listening question: - What colour is the Egyptian flag?

196

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمعاس

a) camp

a) prizes

a) flat

Holidays

d) ride

d) souvenirs

d) fly

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the co	orrect answer from a, b	, c or d:
1. I like to	in the mountain	s.
a) camp	b) climb	c) swim

2. There's a beautiful by the lake.

b) awards

b) fat

- a) forests b) dolphin c) view d) deserts 3. Last year we went to Aswan and bought many to remember the
- places we visited.

c) presents

c) float

- 4. We ate fishdinner last night.
- b) at c) in d) on a) for
- 5. I went to Hurghada and played with the by the sea. b) giraffes a) lions c) elephants
- d) dolphins 6. Ais a big, strong building.
 - a) lake b) castle c) river d) camp
- 7. I stayed in a holidayin Hurghada.
- 8. Where did you goholiday?
- c) into d) out a) with b) on
- Read and correct the underlined words:
- 1. A dolphin is a friendly see animal.
 - 2. I made a great holiday last year.
 - 3. Where do you usually stay four a holiday?

العن الاول الاعدادي (مرتع الكرال التعليم) كتاب Gem



Ask and answer questions about your last holiday

السؤال والإجابة عن إجازتك الماضية



Speaking Exercises

	Supply the missing	parts in the	following	mini-dialogues
--	--------------------	--------------	-----------	----------------

1. Amira	: Did you camp by the lake last week?
Salma	:
2. Nesreen	:
Ahmed	: I went to Hurghada on holiday.
3. Roaa	

: Yes, I climbed a mountain last holiday. Basmala

Lessons 1,2%3

2+2-8

General Exercises

Listen and ans	wer the following qu	estions:	
1. What did Maria	m make on the beach	?	
2. Why didn't Mai	riam go into the cave?		
3. How was the w	eather last summer?		
2 Complete the	following dialogue:		
Basel : Hi, Nour. ((1)	you go last sumer?	
Nour: Hello, Bas	el. I (2)	to Alexandria.	
Basel : Alex. (3)		?	
Nour : Yes, we en	joyed there very mucl	.	
Basel : (4)		?	
Nour : I swam in	the sea and made san	dcastles.	
Supply the mis	sing parts in the follo	owing two mini-dialog	
		owing two mini-dialog	gues.
I. Nawal : What did	you do last night?		
		- (001	
Seif : No, I play	ed chess yesterday.		
Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b	, c or d:	
1. Ais	a big hole in the mour	itain.	
a) lake	b) cave	c) hill	d) desert
2. Children like to	have to ha	ve fun.	■ ■ TO A SHOP SHOP SHOP SHOP SHOP SHOP SHOP SHOP
a) picnics	b) caves	c) forests	d) tents
3. My mother alwa	ays cooks fo	ood. We all like it.	
a) weak	b) terrible	c) bad	d) delicious
4. What did your n	nother buy	the market?	
a) at	b) with	c) on	d) by
200		550	rantati.€C

2+2-8

Holidays

5. I rode on a came	l. That f	un.	WB
a) has	b) was	c) were	d) are
6. Wea	city called Marrake	sh and we went to a mu	seum. WB
a) are visiting	b) visit	c) visited	d) visiting
7. We also	some delicious	food when we were in N	Morocco.
a) eat	b) ate	c) eaten	d) eating
8you i	n Jordan last week	?	*
a) Are	b) Did	c) Were	d) Was
Read and correc	t the underlined v	words:	
1. I'd like to go to th	ne beach to <u>do</u> a sa	ndcastle.	()
2. How did your day	y yesterday?		()
3. I see a dolphin la	st week.		()
Write a paragra		c you had"	
Rol			
•			





SB pages 50 & 51, WB pages 105 & 106

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary	سية	فردات الرئيد	الم	
London Eye عجلة لندن (معلم سياحي)	wonderful	رانع	rules	قواعد
ملكة queen	enjoy (ed)	يستمتع بـ	the Cairo To	برج القاهرة nwer
fantastic وانع	sign	لافتة		
holiday courses دورات في فترة الإجازة	language school	مدرسة لغات أد		
Expres	sions		تمبيرات	
کم هو مثیر؛ How exciting!	That's interesting	دلك شيق! !g	Oh no!	أوه لا!/ يا إلمي!
جقا! Really!	Oh dear!	يا للمول:/ يا الم	-\/	
What a pity! يا للأسفة/ يا للحسرة!	Wow!	رانع!	QI.	₽O,

Additional Vocabulary	فية	بفردات الإضا	JI	
لندن London	wind	الرياح	bath time	وقت الاستحمام
خفاش bat	windy	ملى، بالرياح	happen (ed)	يحدث
قلعة وندسور Windsor Castle	boat trip	رحلة بالقارب	sandals	صندل
holiday activity نشاط في الإجازة	ticket	تذكرة	tourist	سائح
كم المدة؟؟ How long?	football team	فريق كرة قدم	study (yried)	يدرس/يذاكر



2+2



Lang	uage Expressions	لغوية ويع	التعبيرات اللغوية		
have	▶ a wonderful time	يقضى وقثًا رائعًا	do	a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع
ride	▶ a horse	يركب حصائا	take	▶ turns	يتناوب الأدوار
make	▶ a list	يعمل قلامة	learn	► Arabic	يتعلم اللغة العربية

Prepositions	State of	وف الجري في السيادية	حرو
come from	یاتی من	all around the world من حول أنحاء العالم	walk on the grass یمشی علی الحشانش
a ride on	رحلة على	for homework من أجل الواجب	
by train	بالقطار	for two weeks لمدة أسبوعين	

حريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة					
Present		Past simple	Past participle		
learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt		
lose	يذسر	lost	lost		

Language Notes

It + is/was + adj. + to + inf.

إنه لمن أن ...

It was nice to meet people from different countries.

enjoy + V+ing/noun يستمتع بـ

• I enjoy speaking English.



Reading

Pre-reading question: Did the three students like this holiday activity?

1. Read the text quickly and answer the questions in pairs. SB page 50



Learn English in London!



- Our students come from all around the world to study and learn in this exciting city.
- Holiday courses⁽¹⁾ are for one, two or three weeks.



ىورات تىرىبية (1)

معرسة لقات (2)

قلمة وندسور (3) ملكة (4)

عبلة لنبن (5)

يستمتع بـ (6)

I had a wonderful time at the language school!(2) I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries.

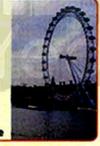
My favourite place was Windsor Castle(3). We went there by train. We walked all around the castle, but we did not see the Queen 49!





I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye(5), because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.







When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were fun and for homework, we did interesting projects. I enjoyed (6) speaking English!

Post-reading question:

- Was Jurgen's English good when he first came to London?



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمسوس

Holidays

Listening

Pre-listening question:

- Why didn't Mazin see anything in the cave?

1. Listen. What ate Mazin's ice cream?

SB page 51

Speaker: What did you do yesterday, Mazin?

: I went to the zoo. Mazin

Speaker: Oh, that's interesting. Did you enjoy the day?

: No. I didn't. Mazin

Speaker: Oh, dear! Why not?

: Well! First, we went to see the monkeys, Mazin but they were very tired. I think they were

in bed.

Speaker: What a pity! So you didn't see them.

: No, we didn't, then the we went to into Mazin a cave to see the bats, but it was dark and

I didn't see anything.

Speaker: What did you do next?

: Then, we bought an ice cream and went Mazin to see the elephants. It was bath time for

them.

Speaker : Wow! How exciting.

: Yes, I enjoyed that, but there is something Mazin

bad happened.

Speaker: Oh, no! What happened?

: An elephant ate my ice cream.

Post-listening question: - Did Mazin enjoy his trip?













Reading

Complete the email with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets. WB page 105



Hi, Ali!

Last summer, I travelled to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I went to a language school in Cairo. I had a wonderful time. I was there for two weeks. The people in Cairo were very friendly. Now I have many new friends. When I first went to the language school, I wasn't very good at Arabic.

But the teachers helped me, and the lessons were fun. Now I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I bought lots of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I enjoyed the view of the city from the top. What did you do last summer?

Write soon and tell me. Andy, England.

Project

- Work in groups. Find out which holiday activities people can do in Egypt. Make a list. قم بالعمل في مجموعة. قم باكتشاف أنشطة الإجازة التي يمكن للناس ممارستها في مصر. قم بعمل قائمة.
- Work in pairs. Make an advertisement for a holiday in Egypt.

مّم بالعمل الثنائي. مّم بعمل إعلان عن إجازة في مصر.

- 1. Choose one activity from Exercise 3.
- 2. Design and write an online advertisement and add pictures.

صمم واكتب إعلانًا وصورًا عبر الإنترنت.

3. Show the class.

اعرضه على الفصل.

لختر نشاطًا من التدريب رقم ٢.



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فطعوه

Values

1. Look at these signs. What do they mean?

انظر إلى الإشارات. ماذا تعنى؟

d) Break

d) cave

d) Arabic

d) rules

d) weak

d) see

d) buy









2. Why do places have these rules for tourists?

لماذا تضع الأماكن هذه القواعد للسائمين؟

3. Can you think of any more rules for tourists?

هل يمكنك التفكير في قواعد أكثر للسائمين؟

Vocabulary Exercises

1	Choose the corre	ect answer	from a,	b, c or	d:
---	------------------	------------	---------	---------	----

.....courses are very useful for students.

b) Week c) Holiday a) Rest

2. Don't throw paper here. There is a there.

b) list c) rule a) sign

3. Aya is very good at English, she goes to aschool.

c) nursery b) language a) sports

4. It's important to follow school

b) rolls c) roles a) roils

5. We went on aholiday. We enjoyed there.

b) fantastic c) bad a) boring

6. I need to projects for my homework.

b) make c) take a) do

7. Tourists go to the Pyramids andhorses.

c) ride b) climb a) drive

Read and correct the underlined words:

Tours come from different countries to visit Egypt.

2. You can't do many things on the same time.

3. I visited the London ear last year.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيق

WB

dear!



Speaking

Responding to good/bad news الرد على الأخبار الجيدة / السيئة

A) Good news: 🤗 الأخبار الجيدة



How exciting!

كم هو مثير!

Really? Wow!

رائع!

حقاا

That's interesting!

ذلك شيق!

B) Bad news: 😕 الأخبار السيلة



Oh, dear! Oh, no!

يا للمول!/ يا إلمي! أوه لا!/ يا إلمي!.

What a pity!

با للأسف!/ با للمسرة!

Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:

Hanan : I went to the beach last weekend.

: How was the weather, there?

Hanan: When we arrived, it was very windy.

Lina

Hanan: We didn't want to swim in the sea.

Lina : What a (2).....

Hanan: Then the wind stopped and we went on a boat trip.

: How (3)..... Lina

Hanan : We saw six big dolphins!

Lina : (4).....

Hanan: Then my brother's phone fell in the water.

Lina

Hanan : The phone was OK. Some new phones can go in water!

Lina : That's (6).....

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيف



2+2-9

SB page 52, WB page 107

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية			
postcard	بطاقة بريدية	snails	قواقع	light	ضوء/ مصباح
art	الفن	journey	رحلة	***************************************	

Additional Vocabulary		a contract of	مفردات الإضافي	JII.	
	Places	and countries	ويلاد	اماکن ر	
Science Museum متحف العلوم		Luxembourg Gardens حدائق لکسمبورج		Louvre	متحف اللوفر
Eiffel Tower	برج ايقل	Paris	باريس	Ramses Station طة رمسيس	
Canada	كندا	the River Seine کندا		Valley of the Kings الملوك	

Language Expressions	L. Sandana	التعبيرات اللعويد	
have ▶ time	يقضى/ لديه وقت	I'm back from	عدت/رجعت من
have ▶ a view of	يلقى نظرة علي	See you soon.	أواك قويباً

Preposition	S IV S INTER		ف الجر	حرو	
on holiday	في إجازة	for a holiday	لقضاء إجازة	for example	على سبيل المثال
go on a boat	يذهب في قارب	on the river	في النمر	on the top	في القمة

Words and Opposites			كلمات وعكسها	ता —			
closed	مغلق	open	مفتوح	leave (left)	يغادر	arrive	يصل

209

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمصولة

Write it right

How to write about your holiday?

كيف تكتب عن إجازتك؟

- I went to (المكان) for holiday.
- I went with (الشخص / الأشخاص)
- We stayed in (المكان)
- We visited (المكان) and saw (الأشياء)
- We ate (الطعام)
- We travelled there by (وسيلة المواصلات)
- I enjoyed it very much / didn't enjoy it because (السب)

Writing tips

The form of an email is:

: from/ to/ subject Header Greeting: Hi/ Helio

Body : the topic

Closing : Best wishes / Yours /

See you soon.

Signature: Sender's name

Example







To : mazin@student.com From : hany@student.com

Subject : My visit to Alex

Hello Mazin,

I went to Alexandria for a holiday. I went with my family. We stayed in a nice hotel. We visited Fort Qaitbey and the Muntazah Palace. We ate fish in a nice restaurant. We travelled there by train. I enjoyed it very much because it's a wonderful city.

Best wishes. Hany

Now, your turn:

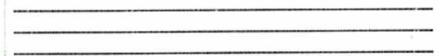
حان دورك الأن:

Write an email to your friend Ola about your holiday.









هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى يعطيها

الصف الأول الأعدادي مرتج الكرال التعليم كتاب Gem



Reading

Pre-reading question:

- When did the train leave to Cairo?

Put the email into the correct order.

WB page 107



Hi Fady,

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train, for example, England and Australia.

The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.

We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train here.

They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings!

The train continued to Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us! It was a wonderful journey.

See you soon!

Mazin

Post-reading question:

- When did they arrive in Aswan?



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوفة

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b,	c or a:	
1. We went	a boat trip last week	6	
a) on	b) of	c) in	d) at
2. I went to the top	of the tower to have a	of the city.	
a) forest	b) view	c) lake	d) sign
3. I ate many things	in Paris like		
a) skins	b) tails	c) snails	d) snakes
4. We went to Canad	da and bought many .		
a) hills	b) jungles	c) waterfalls	d) postcards
5. Paris is a good pla	icea holiday		
a) on	b) at	c) with	d) for
6. One day, my uncl	e climbed the Eiffel	in Paris.	
a) Tour	b) Tower	c) Eye	d) Clock
7. I'm very good at o	frawing and painting,	sois my favo	urite subject.
a) music	b) art	c) maths	d) science
8. There were many	people from many co	ountries on the train,	England
and France.			
a) for example	b) so	c) because	d) when
Read and correct	the underlined word	ds:	
1. I'm pack from my	holiday in Paris.		()
2. We joined our weekend. It was wonderful.			()
3. I can't see anythin	g. There's no height.		()
4. What a petty I did	n't see my grandmoth	er.	()

2+2-8

d) In France.

d) Cheese.

Lessons 4,5 & 6

General Exercises

c) In Canada.

d) The Zoo.

c) Snails.

b) The Eiffel Tower.

b) Went on a boat trip.

d) Saw dolphins.

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Where did you spend your holiday?
 - a) In Africa.
 - b) In America.
 - 2. What place didn't you visit?
 - a) The Science Museum.

c) The River Seine.

- 3. What food did you try there?
 - a) Beans. b) Ice cream.
- 4. What did you do on the river?
 - a) Ate fish.
 - c) Swam.
- 2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:
 - 1. Marwan: I lost my mobile. Mustafa :

2. Sanabel :

: No, I didn't. I watched TV.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Paris is the capital of France and is very popular. It is called as the City of Light. It is on the River Seine. Many tourists visit it. Paris is a wonderful city where you can see many interesting things and views. When you visit it, you should go for a boat tour to get the view of the whole city. You can find the boats on the River Seine. Here you will find day and night rides. If you are riding at night, you will also find dinner here. Its people are very friendly and welcoming. There are cafés and restaurants where you can eat your favourite food. Paris is very famous for making pastries. They offer the best pastries all over the world. One of the most wonderful places is the Eiffel Tower.

While standing on the top of this fantastic building, you can see the whole or Paris city.

- A) Answer the following questions:
 - 1. What does the underlined pronoun "its" refer to?
 - 2. What can you see from the top of Eiffel Tower?
 - 3. What is Paris famous for? .

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصواقع

العف الأول الأعدادي مرتع الكرال التعليم كتاب Gem

المحمل الكواسي الكوال

Holidays

d) friendly

d) pleasure

d) didn't travel

d) swimming

d) pool

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or	
	4.

- 4. The people of Paris are
- a) unkind b) weak
- 5. Paris is standing on a
 - a) river b) lake
- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Tourists usually stay in when they visit other countries.
 - a) mountains b) hotels c) tents d) caves

c) bad

c) sea

- 2. We learn about people'swhen we travel to different countries. a) eagles b) jungles c) forests d) cultures
- 3. A: I didn't find my mobile. B: What a
 - a) pity b) fun c) joy
- 4. I will go to holiday to be good at English. d) schools
- a) tours b) towers c) courses
- 5. They by car. They walked.
- a) travel b) travelled c) don't travel 6.1 _____in the sea, but I didn't see any dolphins.
- a) swim b) swum c) swam
- 7. Did you yesterday evening?
- a) play b) played c) playing d) plays
- 8. Why he sad last night? a) is b) does c) was d) did
- 5) Read and correct the underlined words:

(Your name is Abdullah and your friend's name is Anas.)

- I made a wonderful time last week.
 - 2. Students at this school come from a round the world.
 - 3. What are you do yesterday?
 - 4. I didn't bought anything yesterday.
- Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on:

"A holiday you spent in a nice place"

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفه



2+2-8

Unit 5 Review

Vocabulary

Vocabulary		ىفردات		ما		
holiday	إجازة	rules	قواعد	holiday courses دورات في فترة الإجازة		
rock	مخرة	beach	شاطئ	wonderful وانع		
desert	صحراء	castle	قلعة	jungle أدغال/ غابة كثيفة		
river	تمر	hotel	فندق	waterfall شلال		
eat delicious fo	ood یاکل طعامًا لذیدً	cave	كمف	forest غابة		
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	make a sandca	stle يصنع قلعة رمليا	sand J		
camp (ed)	يعسكرا يخيم	play games	يلعب ألعابًا	climb a mountain پتسلق جبلًا		
holiday flat	شقه العطلة	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة	ride a bike يركب براجة		
souvenir	مدية تذكارية	go into a cave	يدخل كهفًا	swim in the lake يسبح في البحيرة		
queen	ملكة	enjoy (ed)	يستمتع بـ	frightened of خانف من		
fantastic	رائع	sign	Kázá	aight مصباح		
postcard	بطاقة بريدية	snails	قواقع	دولفین dolphin		
London Eye مجلة لندن (معلم سياحي) view		منظر طبيعى	language school مدرسة لغات			

216

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصفيق

Language

The past	simple ±	الماضى البسيد	
Statements	Negative	Questions	
They played football. He went to the zoo.	They didn't play football. He didn't go to the zoo.	Did they play football? Did he go to the zoo?	

Speaking

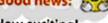
Ask and answer questions about your last holiday.

- Where did you go on holiday?
- I went to Alexandria.
- Did you swim in the sea?
- Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin too, and I swam with it.
- What food did you eat?
- I ate a lot of fish.

2+2.0

Responding to good / bad news

A) Good news:



How exciting!

Really?

Wow!

That's interesting!

B) Bad news:



Oh, dear!

Oh, no!

What a pity!

Unit

Cumulative Exercises

أهم أسئلة كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وأسئلة GEM على الوحدة الخامسة.

1 Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or False (F):			
		F	1	Γ
1. They visited their uncle in October.	()	()
2. Ali didn't ride a bike.	()	()
3. They had a picnic at Al Azhar Park.	()	()
4. They played games.	()	()
5. The food was not delicious.	- ()	()
2 Complete the following dialogue:				
Nourhan: Where did you spend your summer (1)			?
Doha : I went to Hurghada.				
Nourhan : Great! (2)	_?\			
Doha : I went with my family.				
Nourhan : (3)?				
Doha : In a hotel.				
Nourhan: Did you enjoy your time there?				
Doha : (4)				
3 Supply the missing parts in the following two	mini-dia	logues	s:	
1. Mohsen : Where did you go last weekend?				
Medhat :				
2. Atef :?				

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى المعام

Magda : Yes, I did. And I swam in the sea.

Holidays

d) glad

Read the following, then answer the questions:

I will never forget this year's holiday. At first I thought this holiday would be very boring because I was going to the sea with my family.

The beginning was quite boring, but I went with my parents and my family by the sea. We stayed for 3 weeks there! We stayed a at nice, but quite expensive hotel, I think. The hotel was near the sea, it was really comfortable. During those three weeks, I met a lot of interesting and kind people.

They became my friends. We built sandcastles, swam and visited many interesting places. The weather was great every morning. I enjoyed my holiday.

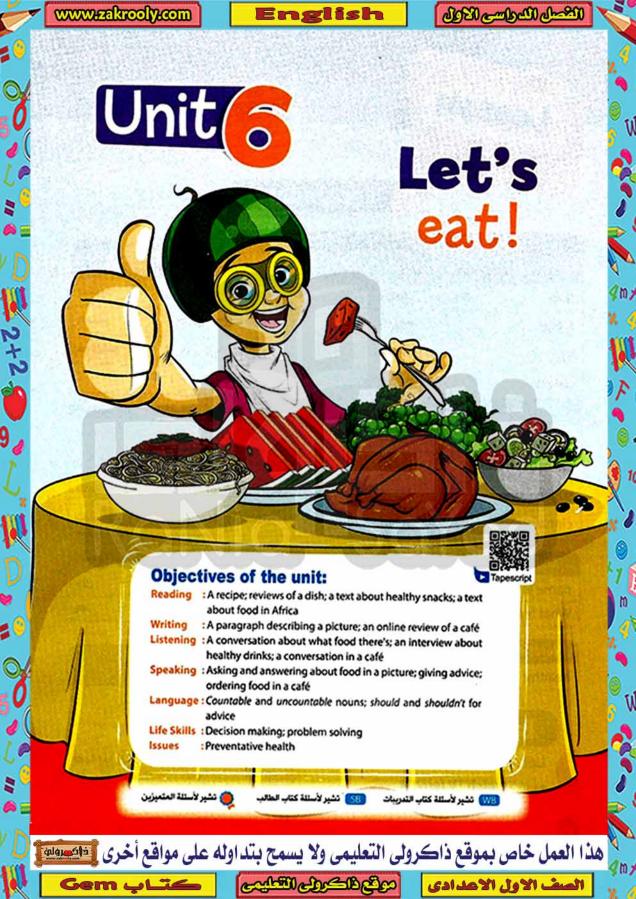
A) Answer the following questions:

- 1. How long did you spend on the last holiday?
- 2. How was the hotel you stayed in? 3. Did you enjoy your holiday?
- B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 4. The underlined word "boring" is the opposite of
 - a) bad b) dull c) interesting
 - 5. The hotel wasn't the sea. a) far from b) near c) behind d) next to
- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1. Ia horse in the forest when we had a picnic there.
 - a) drove b) rode c) went d) flew
 - 2. I swam in the sea anda dolphin.
 - a) saw b) played c) built d) had
 - My family and I went to the beach and Ia sandcastle.
 - a) made b) had c) climbed d) camped
 - 4. You can see beautiful from the top of the Eiffel Tower.
 - a) forests b) cars c) views d) deserts

SB









SB pages 54&55, WB page 109

Vocabulary

Key Vocabu	lary	ā	فردات الرئيسي	الم	TALKS:		
со	untable no	uns	اسماء معدودة				
nuts	جوزابندق	crisps	رقائق البطاطس	biscuits	بسكويت		
cakes	كعك	beans	فول	tomatoes	طماطم		
figs 🔋	تين	olives	زيتون	vegetables	خضراوات		
raisins *	زبيب	peppers	فلفل				
unc	ountable r	ouns	ð	سماء غير معدود			
meat	لحم	rice pudding	أرز بودنج (حلو)	chocolate	شيكولائة		
cheese	جبن	juice	عصير	coconut	جوزة الهند		
sugar	سكر	hummus	حمص	fruit	فاكهة		
cinnamon	قرفة	salad	سلطة	fish	سمك ا		

Additional Voca	abulary	المفردات الإضافية	
name (d)	يذكر اسم/يطلق اسم/يسمى	field	حقل
What food?	ما الطعام؟	count (ed)	يعد

Words and Opposites				الكلمات وعكسها		ENERGY STATE	
healthy	صدي	unhealthy	غير صحى	countable	يُعد	uncountable	لايعد

Language Notes

Let's + inf.

هيا بنا (تُستخدم لتقديم الاقتراح)

Let's watch TV tonight.

222

2+2-8

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمسوي

Lesson

Let's eat!

Listening

Pre-listening question:

- Have they got any cheese?
 - 2. Listen to Nadia and her brother Omar.

Which two things do they not have?

ىمىن (1)

زينون (2)

ننتل (3)

نين (4)

SB page 55

Nadia: Let's make lunch. I think we'll go to the field.

Omar: There is some salad. Is there any hummus(1)?

Nadia: No, there isn't. But there are some olives (2).

Omar: There are some peppers(3), too.

Nadia: Good. Is there any cheese?

Omar: Yes, there is. I've got it.

Nadia: What about figs(4). Are there any figs?

Omar: No. There aren't any figs.

Nadia: There are some raisins (5).

Omar: That's good.

زييب (5)







Post-listening question:

-What are Nadia and Omar going to make?

a) sports



Vocabulary Exercises

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. We should eat food.
 - d) polluted a) unhealthy b) healthy c) bad
 - 2. A: What healthy do you like to eat? B: Fish and rice. c) hobbies d) food
 - 3. We can't count
 - d) olives b) figs c) beans a) sugar
 - 4. Tomatoes andare kinds of vegetables. d) bananas b) apples c) peppers a) papers
 - 5.is a very healthy drink.

b) subjects

d) Nuts c) Peppers b) Raisins a) Cinnamon

c) salt

- 6. I like eating salad and
- b) meet a) juice 7. I'd like to haveand eggs for breakfast.
- d) pens b) bins c) pins a) beans
- 8.are unhealthy food.
- d) Potatoes b) Vegetables c) Crisps a) Fruits
- Read and correct the underlined words:
 - 1. Let's had some juice.
 - A: What <u>subject</u> do you like? B: Meat and pasta.
 - 3. We add sugar to food to make it tasty.
 - 4. Rice is my favourite dessert.

d) meat

Let's eat!

Language

Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد

1. Uncountable nouns:

الأسماء غير المعدودة

meat - sugar - salt - cheese - salad - juice - hummus

- Uncountable nouns do not have a plural form. We cannot count them and we cannot use a/an before them.
 - والأسماء التي لا تعد ليس لها جمع. لا يمكن عدها ولا يتم استخدام (a/an) قبلها.
 - There is some bread on the table. - There isn't any meat in the dish.
 - This meat tastes nice.

2. Countable nouns:

الأسماء التي تعد

(cake - cakes) / (fig - figs) / (olive - olives) / (tomato - tomatoes)

- Countable nouns are nouns we can count. They can be singular or plural.
- Use a/an before a singular countable noun. The plural usually ends in -s.
- ه الأسـماء المعدودة: هي الأسـماء التي يمكن عدها وتكون مفرد أو جمع. يمكن اسـتخدام (a/an) قبل الاسـم المفرد فقط. ينتمى الاسم الجمع غالبًا بحرف (5).

Countable nouns

مفرد singular

plural جمع

- نستخدم الفعل في حالة المفرد إذا كان الاسم مفردا
- There is a restaurant in this street.
- There isn't any cheese.

- نستخدم الفعل في حالة الجمع إذا كان الاسم جمعنا.
- There are some shops in this street.
- There aren't any peppers.

لاحيط: 👢 يتم استخدام (a/an) قبل الأسم المفرد الذي يعد:

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف متحرك: (a – e – i – o – u)

- There's an apple on the table.
- Ola ate an orange.

- نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف ساكن:
- There's a car in front of my house.
- There's a book in my bag.

Unit (

يوجد (للمفرد / للكمية) 3. There is

- يأتي بعدها اسم (يعد) في حالة المفرد/اسم لا يعد (كمية).

- There is
- There is an apple on the table.
- There is some rice in the dish.
- **Question:**
- Is there an apple on the table?
- Is there any rice in the dish?

- يوجد (للجمع فقط) There are
- There are
- يأتى بعدها اسم يعد في حالة الجمع.
- There are some apples on the table.
- There are some raisins.
- **Question:**
- Are there any apples on the table?
- Are there any raisins?

4. Some & Any:

Some

- We use "some" for affirmative sentences.
 - نستخدم (some) بمعنى (بعض) مع الجمل المثبتة. نستخدم بعدها اسمًا (يعد) في حالة الجمع أو اسمًا لا يُعد (كمية).
 - There are some figs in this dish.

 - There is some rice in this dish. (uncountable)
- We use some in Yes/ No questions that are offers or requests.



(countable)

- Would you like some tea? offer
- Can I have some books? arequest طلب

Any

- We use "any" for negative sentences and questions.
- نستخدم (any) بمعنى (أي) مع الجمل المنفية وفي السؤال. نستخدم بعدها اسمًا (يعد) في حالة الجمع أو اسمًا لا يعد (كمية).
- There aren't any olives. (جملة منفية)
- Has koshari got any meat in it? (سوال)



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالصوفة

◄ يمكننا استخدام (some) في السؤال في حالتي (العرض والطلب).

a) any

a) a

d) Have

d) an

d) any

d) any

d) some

d) does

d) a

Let's eat!

Language Exercises

c) Was

c) a

c) some

c) some

c) any

c) do

c) an

1	Choose the	correct answer	from a.	b. c o	r d:
	CHOOSE the	correct answer	nom a	D, C 0	· u.

1. there any tomatoes in the salad?

b) some

b) an

- b) Are a) Is
- Sara likes to eat meat for dinner.
- 3. I need drink, please.
- 4. I have friends in America.
- a) an b) a
- 5. I buy some every week.
- a) banana b) bananas c) bananas' d) banana's
- 6. We don't drink orange juice.
- a) an b) a
- 7. There milk in the fridge.
- a) is b) are
- 8. Do you want sugar? b) some a) any
- Read and correct the underlined words:
- 1. I haven't got some money.
 - 2. There are any hotels in this town.
 - 3. There are any empty shops in your village.
 - 4. Could I have a olive?



Speaking |

Ask and answer questions about food السؤال والإجابة عن الطمام



Speaking Exercises

Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues		Supply the missing	parts in	the fo	llowing	mini-dialo	gues
--	--	--------------------	----------	--------	---------	------------	------

:What food do you like, Gehad? 1. Ameera

Gehad

2. Hend

Mother : No, there aren't any cakes.

:What food don't you like? 3. Sama

Lamiaa



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيف



SB pages 56 & 57, WB page 110

Vocabulary

Key Vocabul	ary	d	فردات الرئيسيا	الم	
recipe	وصفة طعام	delicious	لذيذ	review	نقد/مقالة نقدية
fridge	ثلاجة	ingredients	مقادير/مكونات	sweet	حلو
prefer (red)	يفضل	perfect	ممتاز	online	عبر الإنترنت
		cooking verbs	أفعال الطهو		
boil (ed)		يغلى	add (ed)		يضيف
stir (red)		ينقلب	cook (ed) (v	/n)	يطمى/يطبخ/طباخ
		equipment	معدات	3	
teaspoon	الباعاة	ملعقة شاي	saucepan		قدر صغير
cup		فنجان	bowl		سلطانية

Additional Voc	abulary	افية	بفردات الإض	الد	
hot chocolate ولاته ساخنة	مشروب شيكو	slowly	ببطئ	ready	جاهز/مستعد
the whole	کل	instructions	تعليمات	make food	يعد طعامنا
a bit	قليلأ	plate	طبق	make a recipe	يعد وصفة

Prepositions	1000		وف الجر	حرو	
put into	يضع في	on top	على القمة	decide to	يقرر أن

Confus	ing Words		SEEKS POPULS			SCA CHES	
recipe	وصفة طعام	receipt	فاتورة/ إيصال	fridge	ثلاجة	bridge	کوبری
stir		star	NUMBER OF STREET	prefer	يفضُل	refer	يشير

22

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمسلمة

Lesson

Reading



Pre-reading question:

- Do you like Roz Bel Laban?

2. Read the recipe and put these pictures in the correct order. SB page 56

Roz Bel Laban: Egyptian Rice Pudding









- فلجان (1)
- ماملة شای (2)
- تىرمغير (3) يظى (4)
- ينيد (5)
- بالب (6)
- (7) 430







Ingredients

- 1 cup⁽¹⁾ of rice
- 2 cups of water
- 3 cups of milk
- 1 cup of sugar
- 1/4 a cup of raisins
- 1/4 a cup of nuts
- **%ateaspoon** (2) of cinnamon

Instructions

- 1. Put the rice and water in a saucepan(3).
- 2. Boil (4) the rice and water for 20 minutes.
- 3. Add (5) the milk slowly as you stir (6).
- 4. Add the sugar and stir again.
- 5. Put the rice pudding into bowls.
- 6. Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
- 7. Put the rice pudding in the fridge 7.

Post-reading question:

- Can you make Roz Bel Laban now?

Note:

عند إعطاء تعليمات تبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحافقة

Let's eatl

Language

4. Read the reviews of the recipe. Who did not like it?

Really easy! **** This is a great recipe. - It's really easy to make.

- There aren't a lot of ingredients and it's

very quick to cook. Fawzi

a) lists

OK, but a bit boring *** I liked this rice pudding,

but it isn't my favourite. I think there are too many raisins.

- I don't like them. I prefer

rice pudding with coconut. Hana

Perfecti **** - There are a lot of

rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole famlly. - There's a lot of sugar

in the recipe, but I like sweet food.

c) forms

Nabila

Not like my mum's rice pudding! - My mum's rice pudding is delicious, but this rice pudding

isn't very good.

d) pans

d) cut

d) metal

d) Add.

d) Cup.

- There's too much sugar and there aren't enough other ingredients. Salem

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d	, c or d:	from a, b,	answer	correct	the	Choose	1	
---	-----------	------------	--------	---------	-----	--------	---	--

- 1. My mother uses healthy when she cooks our food.
 - 2. After we put sugar in tea, we should it.

b) ingredients

- c) add a) stir b) boil
- 3. Teaspoons, saucepans and cups are all
- c) equipment a) subjects b) machines
- 4. Which of these is not a cooking verb?
 - a) Pudding. b) Boil.
- 5. Which of these can you boil water in?
- - b) Teaspoon. a) Saucepan.
- 6. Which of these is not an ingredient?
 - a) Rice. b) Nuts.

c) Stir.

- c) Bowl.

c) Raisins.

- - d) Stir.

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. My mother showed me the receipt to make rice pudding.
- 2. I like crisps, but I refer nuts.
- 3. Most children like sweat food.

WB

WB.

WB

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفه

d) a lot

d) some



Language

a lot of, enough, too much, too many

We can use t	hese words	with	countable	and	uncoun	table	nouns.

يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات مع الأسماء التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد.

1. a lot of + اسم لا يـُعد/اسم جمع There is a lot of sugar.

.There are a lot of rice pudding recipes.

كافر اسم جمع + 2. enough اسم لا يُعد/اسم جمع + 2. enough اسم لا يُعد/اسم جمع + 2. enough topical top

There is enough rice pudding for all the family.

كثير جدًّا (للعدد) كثير جدًّا (للعدد) كثير جدًّا (للعدد) 3. too many + (جمع)

•There are too many raisins.

كثير جدًا (للكمية) اسم لا ينعد + 4. too much

•There is too much sugar.

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You drink coffee, It's not good for you.

a) a lot of b) too many c) enough

2. I can't wait for them. I haven't got time.

a) many b) enough c) little

3. The beach was very busy because there were people.

a) lots b) enough c) too much d) too many

4. Eatingchocolate is unhealthy.

a) not enough b) enough c) too much d) too many

5. A: Dear friend, do you have food to eat? B: Yes, thank you.

a) enough b) many c) lot d) a

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You use too many sugar in your coffee. It isn't healthy for you. (......)

3. I don't have many money! Only 500 pounds.





2+2

SB pages 58 & 59, WB page 111

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		ىية	مفردات الرئيس	<u></u>	
drinks	مشروبات	fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية	fruit juice	عصير فواكه
sweet taste	مذاق حلو	fat	ىھون	piece	قطعة

Additional Vocabulary		فية	بفردات الإضان	<u>ال</u>	
illness	مرض	hungry	جائع	foods	أطعمة
weight	وزن	the best way	أفضل طريقة	body	جسم/جسد
fantastic	رائع	most	معظم	tooth/teeth	سينة/أسنان

Lang	uage	Expressions	ė dara	ت اللغوي	ببيرا	التع	
give	•	advice on	يعطى نصيحة على	make	•	snacks	يعد وجبات خفيفة
It's O	(to	+ inf.	لا باس ان	a day		DY€	في كل يوم

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
type of	نوع من	at dinner time	في وقت العشاء
lookafter	یعثنی ب	a glass of	کوب من
a piece of	قطعة من	add to	تضيف إلى

Words at	nd Oppos	ites		ات وعكسها	الكلم			
careful	دريص	careless	محمل	good for	مفید ل	bad for	ضار لـ	
right	صديح	wrong	خطا	forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر	

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والصواقع

Unit

Confus	ing Words	1000				THE SEAT	
snack	وجبة خفيفة	snake	ثعبان	fat	ىھون	fit	لائق بدنيا
piece	قطعة	peace	السلام	weight	وزن	wait	ينتظر

Language Notes

stop + (V + ing)

يتوقف عن

- You should stop eating too many snacks.
- هذه الكلمات تعامل معاملة المفرد everyone / everybody / someone / somebody
 - Everyone loves snacks.

enjoy + (V + ing) / noun

- يستمتوب
- . I enjoy watching TV. I enjoy music.
 - a piece of / pieces of قطعة/قطو من
- We can often use a piece of/pieces of with uncountable nouns:
 - يمكننا استخدام هذه الكلمات مع الأسماء التي لا تعد لتوضح العدد.
 - Here's a piece of cheese.
 - Eat four pieces of fruit.

Check Point

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. I enjoy read English books.
- 2. Everyone in my family like juice.
- 3. I asked Ali to stop watch too much TV.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فطعوه

Unit (

Lesson

Listening

Pre-listening question:

Speaker

- Should we drink a lot of water?

ىمون (1)

مشروبات (2)

مشروبات غازية (3)

SB page 59

Speaker : It's important to eat the right things, but

7. Listen to the interview and check your answers to Ex 6.

we shouldn't forget about what we drink. Dr Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr

Randa, what should we drink?

Dr Randa : Well! We should drink a lot of water. Water

is great because it hasn't got any fat " or sugar.

: OK. So we should drink more water and

Dr Randa : Some drinks (2) have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are

what things are bad for us?

bad for our bodies and they are bad for

our teeth.

: So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar. Some fizzy Speaker

drinks (3) don't have any sugar, are they okay?

Dr Randa : No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth even when they

don't have sugar.

: So, we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are any drinks good for Speaker

our teeth?

Dr Randa : Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should try to drink a glass

of milk every day.

Post-listening question:

- What do you think of fizzy drinks?



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحمود

Let's eat!

Issues

Work in pairs. Discuss these situations. What should we do? What shouldn't we do?

اعمل مع زميلك. ناقش تلك المواقف. ماذا يجب أن نفعل؟ وماذا يجب ألا نفعل؟

- 1. I like sweet food, but I don't want to eat too many cakes or biscuits.
 - -You shouldn't eat too many cakes or biscuits.
- 2. I want to look after my teeth.
- 3. I'm not hungry at dinner time.
- 4. I eat a lot of olives because they are good for me.
 - You need to have healthy foods that help your body to grow.
 - Unhealthy foods cause illness and add to your weight.



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمسلس

Unit 6

2+2-8

Vocabulary Exercises

A lot of cakes an	d biscuits are bad	our bodies.	
a) for	b) to	c) with	d) at
2. It is a good idea	to eat between two a	nd four o	f fruit a day.
a) spears		b) species	
c) spices		d) pieces	
You need to hav	e foods tha	t help your body to	grow.
a) health		b) healthy	
c) unhealthy		d) polluted	
4. Most children lo	ve food that has swee	t	
a) test	b) type	c) taste	d) form
5. We should be	with the food	I we eat.	
a) careless	b) careful	c) good	d) bad
6. The food my mo	ther cooked yesterday	was delicious, but it	had much
in it.			
a) salt	b) sugar	c) sand	d) soil
7. We shouldn't ha	ve a lot of	frinks.	
a) healthy	b) good	c) careful	d) fizzy
3. Fruits and veget	ables are healthy	•	
a) snakes		b) hobbies	
c) snacks		d) subjects	
Read and corre	ct the underlined wo	rds:	
I. Sweets are good	for your teeth.		(
2. Crisps have a lot	of <u>fit</u> .		(
2 Machauld lack	at aur baalth		,





Let's eat!

Language

Giving Advice:

إعطاء النصيحة

- We use should/shouldn't to say that something is or is not a good idea:
 - عند إعطاء النصح نستخدم (should) (ينبغي أن) أو (should't) (لا ينبغي أن) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

Subject + should + inf.

- We should drink a lot of water.
- We should eat healthy food.

- Subject + shouldn't + inf.
- You shouldn't eat too many crisps.
- You should not drink too much fruit juice.
 - تستخدم لتقديم الاقتراحات أو تقديم الرأي.
- We should visit our grandparents tonight.

Question:

- Should + Subject + inf.?
- Should we eat healthy snacks?

RaNia Sayed



12

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمحسس

WB

WB

WB

d) have



a) had

Language Exercises

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. We eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it.
 - a) shouldn't b) should

b) having

- c) shouldn't to d) should to
- 2. We shouldlots of fish. It doesn't have a lot of fat in it.
- 3. Lama feels ill. Shesee a doctor.

c) has

- a) needs b) should c) has d) does
- 4. It's cold. You wear a jacket. a) should b) shouldn't
- c) have d) haven't She's always tired. Shenot go to bed late every night.
- a) hasn't b) shouldn't c) should d) must
- 6. You shouldsome fruit or vegetables every day.
- a) eat b) ate d) eating c) eaten
- 7. You _____ ask the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.
- a) haven't b) shouldn't c) have d) should
- 8. buy the dress or the skirt? a) Should b) Shouldn't c) I should
- d) Should I
- Read and correct the underlined words:
 - You should to clean your teeth in the morning. WB
 - 2. That's a fantastic book. You should not read it.
 - 3. Children should drink sugary drinks?

Lessons 1,2&3

General Exercises

-30	nswer the following qu eces of fruit should you	eat a day?	
2. What do peop	the basis of the lates of the same		-
3. Do you think	C. S.		
	e following dialogue:		
Soheir : You lo	ok tired. What's the matt	er?	
	know, but I can't do my	17.07	
	Mion, sucreamed in		
	ots of crisps and cakes.		
	ots of crisps and cakes.	,	
	on't eat much fruit. Wha		
Company resembles	One eat much mult. Wha		
Supply the m	issing parts in the follo	owing two mini-diale	ogues:
1. Mohamed: Who	at food do you like?		
Mahmoud :			
2. Zaki :		?	
Zeinab : No,	there isn't any hummus	in this recipe.	
Choose the control	orrect answer from a, b), c or d:	
1. I like these	because they a	re hot.	
	b) cheese		d) peppers
	ne a of sugar.	1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	
a) cup	b) glass	c) teaspoon	d) saucepan
a) cap	U/ 91033	c) teaspoon	u) saucepail







2+2

SB pages 60 & 61, WB pages 112 & 113

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		d	ردات الرئيسيا	المف
	-	Foods	طعمة	1
tagine	طاجن	koshari	کشری	shepherd's pie مطيرة الراعي
spices	توابل	potatoes	بطاطس	stew حساء/يخنة
nyama na irio اکلة)	نياما نا إربو (اسم	onions	بمل	kapenta (نوع سمك كابينتا (نوع سمك
cheese pizza	بيتزا بالجبنة	chicken	لحم الدجاج	salad سلطة
	Adjectives to	describe food	طعاه	صفات تصف ال
healthy		مدن 🔝	amazing	منعل
wonderful		رائع	great	عظيم

	الد	عفردات الإضاة	ىية	Vocabulary	Additional
كينيا	Kenya	زيمبابوي	Zimbabwe	مذاق	taste
إناء للطمي	cooking pot	تقليدى	traditional	وجبة	meal
زيون	customer	مقمى	café	يجفف	dry (ied)
بيتزا بالطماطم	tomato pizza	نادل/جرسون	waiter	قائمة طعام	menu

Langu	age	Expressions	ä	التعبيرات اللغوي	
catch	•	fish	يصطاد سمكنا	Anything else?	هل تريد أي شيء أخر؟
order	•	food	يطلب طعامنا	Is that everything?	هل هذا كل شيء؟

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
for dinner	على العشاء	in the sun	في الشمس

243

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمسولة

Lesson

Reading ____

Pre-reading question: - What are the ingredients of tagine?

2. Read the descriptions and check your answers to Exercise 1. SB page 60

Food in Africa



Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite meal is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

Marwa



I live in Morocco, Tagine(1) is a traditional meal from my country. It is a stew (2) with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices (3).

The taste is amazing! (4) The name tagine comes from

the cooking pot for this food.

Hamza



دساءايخنة (2)

توابل (3)

(4) dain

نياما نا ايرو (اسم أكلة) (5)

كابينتا (اسم أكلة) (7)

رائع (6)



In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio (5) for dinner. It is a stew with meat and potatoes. It is wonderful (6)! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry! Makena

Post-reading question:

- What's kapenta?



Kapenta (7) is a popular type of fish in Zimbabwe. We catch the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good

بمل (8) for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and onions (8). It is great! Bradley

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فللصوي

Lesson

Let's eat!

Listening



Pre-listening question:

- What kind of pizza do you like?

Listen to the people in a café. Tick (✓) the food that the customer buys.

SB page 60

: Hello, what would you like Waiter

today?

Customer: I'd like a cheese and tomato

pizza, please.

: Okay, anything else? Waiter

Customer : Yes, a salad, please.

Waiter : Small or large?

Customer: Small, please.

Waiter : And would you like any drinks?

Customer: Have you got any fruit juice?

Waiter : Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.

Customer: I'd like orange juice, please.

Waiter : Is that everything?

Customer : Yes, It is.

Waiter : That's 105 pounds, please.

Customer : Thank you, here you are.

Post-listening question:

- What would the customer like to drink?





Vocabulary Exercises

a) waiter	b) customer	c) seller	d) worker
			d) Worker
2. Many people like t			
a) catch	b) hold	c) touch	d) move
3. We choose the foo	d we want to eat in	the restaurant from t	
a) advertisement	b) article	c) menu	d) list
4. I was angry becaus	se the did	n't bring the food qui	ckly.
a) waiter		b) water	
c) customer		d) nurse	
5. We went to the	yesterday to	have our dinner. It w	as great.
a) café	b) coffee	c) cinema	d) park
6. Beans are a/an	meal for bre	akfast in Egypt.	
a) bad		b) unknown	
c) unusual		d) traditional	
7. In Zimbabwe, peo	ple catch the fish fr	om the lake and	it in the su
a) boil	b) dry	c) cool	d) heat
8. Koshari is a delicio	us mealr	ice, pasta and tomato	es.
a) in	b) with	c) by	d) on
Read and correct	the underlined we	ords:	
1. Most snacks have	lots of <u>species</u> in th	em.	()
2. You feel <u>angry</u> wh	en you don't eat fo	r a long time.	()
3. I eat the three mai	n miles a day.		()
4. When I smell toma	toes, I feel I want to	o cry.	()

246

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمسطو

ڪتاب Gem

مرقع الكري التعليب

الصف الاول الاعدادي

Let's eat!



Ordering food in a café طلب طمام بالمقهى

Situa	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف <u>tion</u>	الرد Response	جملة
9	- What would you like?	ماذا تربد؟	
	* I'd like pizza.	- اربد بیتزا.	
	* Have you got any salad?	- هل لديكم سلطة؟	<i>,</i> (
(9)	- Yes, we have. Small or large?	نعم لدينا. أتربد طبق كبيرًا أم صغيرًا	4
	* Large, please.	- طبقًا كبيرًا من فضلك.	<i>,</i> (3)
9	- Is that everything?	هل هذا كل ما تريد؟	
	* Yes, thank you.	ٍ - نعم، شكرًا لك.	9
(9)	- Anything else?	هل تريد شيانا آذر؟	
	* No, thanks.	- لا، شكرًا.	/
9	-That's 100 pounds.	الحساب مائة جنيه.	
	* Thank you, here you are.	- شكرًا، تفضل.	

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والصويق



Speaking Exercises

Complete the following dialogue:

Waiter : Hello, sir. (1).....

Ramy: Pasta and kofta.

Waiter : (2) about salad?

Ramy : Yes, I (3) salad.

Waiter : (4) else?

Ramy : Yes, I want orange juice.

- Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:
- 1. Customer: Have you got any salad?

: Yes, we have. Small or large? Waiter

Customer:

2. Waiter

Kady: I'd like orange juice, please.









SB page 62, WB page 114

Vocabulary

Additional Vocabulary	·	المفردات الإضافية		
review	نقد/مقالة نقدية	wall	حائط/جدار	
visit (ed) v/n	يزور/زيارة	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	
both	کلُ من	part	جزء	
look like	يشبه	real	حقيقى	
basbousa	بسبوسة	soon	قريبنا	
window	شباك/نافذة	kunafa	كنافة	

Prepositions		حروف الجر	
look out of	ينظرمن	forlunch	من أجل الغداء

Present		Past simple	Past participle
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
have/has	يتناول	had	had
make sure	يتأكد	made sure	made sure

Language Notes

look + adj.

2+2-8

The café looked very nice.

يبدو

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى المعصفة

Write it right

How to write a review of a café

- I went to a café in Cairo (الوقت)
- I went with (الأشخاص)
- We had (الطعام)

2+2-8

- -The food was (منفاته)
- We had (الحلو) for dessert.
- I enjoyed (الحلو) most.

Writing tips

- The first sentence of a paragraph is the topic sentence in a paragraph.
- Other sentences are details that should support the topic sentence.
- These details can be reasons, descriptions, or examples. أول جملة في الفقرة هي الجملة الرئيسية. الجمل الأخرى تعطى تفاصيل لتعزز الموضوع. هذه التفاصيل يمكنها ان تكون أسبابًا. وصفًا، أو أمثلة.

Example

Tito Café

I went to a café in Cairo last week. I went with my friends. We had fish and rice. The food was amazing. We had kunafa and basbousa for dessert. I enjoyed basbousa most.

Now, your turn:

حان دورك الأن:

Write a paragraph about a café you like most.

	"The cafe I like most"	
went to a café in _		





Let's eat!

Reading

Pre-reading question:

- What did Sara have for lunch?

1. Read the review. What did Sara like most about her visit? SB page 62 City Café

Great visit! ****

Review by: Sara

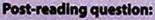
I visited this café last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose this café for lunch because it looked very nice. The walls were green and white and there were big windows. (I love looking out of the window and watching the city.) Ashraf and I both had rice for

lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken. My dad had fish with rice, too and mum had a salad. It's very healthy! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had cakes. This was the part we enjoyed

most! There were a lot of different cakes and they all looked delicious! I chose basbousa and Ashraf had kunafa. They were amazing!!!

I'd like to visit this café again (very soon)!



- Why did Sara's mum have a salad?



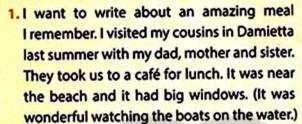
Fesson 6

Reading |



1. Put the article in the correct order.

WB page 114





- 2. I had my favourite meal, Koshari. I love Koshari but this was different than usual. It was delicious. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food.
- 3. We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.
- 4. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!

Read this review. Circle the topic sentence. Underline the supporting sentences.

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice. At a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.

Project

Write a recipe for a meal or snack.

اكتب وصفة لوجبة (رئيسية) أو وجبة خفيفة.

- 1. Choose a meal or a snack. Write a list of ingredients.
- 2. Make a list of instructions. Make sure that you:
 - Say what to do for each part of the recipe.
 - Put the instructions in the correct order.
- 3. Write your recipe. You can add pictures if you like.

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحسي

Lessons 4,5 & 6

General Exercises

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. When did you go to the café?
 - a) Last month.
 - b) Last year.
- c) Last weekend.
- d) Last Thursday.

- 2. How did you go there?
 - a) On foot.
- b) By bus.
- c) By car.
- d) By train.

- 3. What did you have?
 - a) Chicken.

a) Nice.

4. How was the café?

b) Meat.

b) Bad.

c) Pizza.

c) Busy.

d) Free.

d) Biscuits.

- Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:
- 1. Waiter :What would you like?

You

2. Shahd

Shahenda: I'd like small salad.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

A restaurant is a place where people go to eat and drink food. It offers a menu with different kinds of food to choose from.

But I went to a restaurant called Daheb that I don't want to go there again. When we arrived at 1:40, we had to wait 20 minutes while they got our table ready. We ordered the crisps as a side dish and they looked delicious. But, when we tasted them, they had a bad taste. When the waiter asked if everything was OK, we said we really didn't like the crisps and he said, "That's funny, I love them." He didn't offer us anything else. Also, when we didn't leave a tip for him, he looked angry.

- A) Answer the following questions:
 - 1. What time was the table ready?
 - 2. Do you think the restaurant was busy? Why/Why not?
 - 3. Why was the waiter angry in the end?

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فطعوه

11-24	1 4
Unit	4

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to c) crisps b) biscuits
- a) onions 5. The writer was having his
- c) dinner a) breakfast b) lunch
- (4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. We chose that restaurant because itnice.
 - c) looked like a) liked b) looked
 - 2. Mum likes eating salad. She likesfood. b) unhealthy c) bad a) healthy
 - 3. We catch fish from the
 - b) mountain a) lake
 - 4. I love looking the window and watching the city.
 - c) in b) out of a) at
 - 5. I like biscuits with raisins in them. b) too many c) enough
 - a) too much 6. There'sold cheese on the table. I can't eat it.
 - c) a b) some a) any
 - 7. Youeat a lot of vegetables. It's good for you. c) should not
 - b) shouldn't a) can't 8. Therechocolate in the fridge.
 - b) has a) have

6) Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on:

- 5) Read and correct the underlined words:
 - 1. I like pizza. It's a delicious mile.
 - 2. Tagine is a straw with meat, vegetables fruit and spices.
 - 3. There are any biscuits left?
 - 4. I'd like an apple juice.
- "Your favourite dish"

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيف

d) restaurant

d) supper

d) look liked

d) boring

d) cave

d) with

d) lot of

d) should

d) an

d) are

c) forest

c) is

Let's eat

Unit 6 Review



Vocabulary	1		فردات	الما	
nuts	جوز/بندق	peppers	مْلقل	cinnamon	قرفة
cakes	كعك	vegetables	خضراوات	hummus	حمص
figs	تين	tomatoes	طماطم	salad	سلطة
raisins	زبيب	ingredients	مقادير/مكونات	البطاطس crisps م	
recipe	وصفة طعام	saucepan	قدرصغير	coconut	جوز المند
teaspoon	ملعقة شاي	stir (red)	ينقلب	salt	ملح
add (ed)	يضيف	equipment	معدات	boil (ed)	يغلى
fridge	ثلاجة	perfect	ممتاز	bowl	سلطانية
prefer (red)	يفضل	snack	وجبة خفيفة	drinks	مشروبات
fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية	sweet taste	الطعم الحلو	sweet	حلو
onions	بصل	stew	حساء/يخنة	fat	ىمون
tagine	طاجن	wonderful	رائع	fruit juice	عصير فواكة
spices	توابل	beans	فول	healthy	صحى
olives	زيتون	rice pudding	أرز بودنج (حلو)	amazing	مذهل

Language)

1. Countable and uncountable

(some)

- There <u>are</u> some nuts.

- There is some cheese.

(any)

- Are there any chips?

- There isn't any cheese.

255

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والصواقع



2. a lot of / enough / too many / much

a lot of / enough + اسم لا ينعد / اسم جمع

- My little brother eats a lot of sugar every day and that is too bad.
- There aren't enough chairs for everyone to sit on.

اسم لا يُعد + too much / اسم يعد جمع + too much

- . There are too many raisins.
- There's too much sugar.

3. Giving Advice

- عند إعطاء النصح نستخدم should (ينبغى أن) أو shouldn't (لا ينبغى أن) ثم الفعل في المصدر

- We should drink a lot of water.
- You shouldn't eat too many crisps.

Speaking

1. Ask and answer questions about food

- What food do you like?
- What food don't you like?
- Is there any cheese?
- Are there any biscuits?

- I like salad and meat.
 I don't like olives.
- Yes, there is.
- No, there aren't.

2. Ordering food in a café

- What would you like?
- Have you got any salad?
- Is that everything?
- Anything else?
- That's 100 pounds.

- I'd like pizza.
- Yes, we have. Small or large?
- Yes, thank you.
-
- No, thanks.
- Thank you, here you are.

256

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمعاهدة



Cumulative Exercises

أهم أسنلة كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وأسنلة GEM على الوحدة السادسة.

			Т	- 1
1. My favourite di	sh is koshari.	()	(
2. It's a popular m	eal in Morroco.	()	(
3. I eat it with my	family.	()	(
4. It's a delicious r	meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes.	()	(
5. It's very unheal	thy.	()	(
2 Complete the f	ollowing dialogue:			
Waiter : How	can I help you?			
Customer : Hello.	(1)	?		
Waiter : Yes, v	ve've got chicken or cheese and tomat	o pizza.		
Customer : (2)		chicken, p	lease	? .
Waiter : (3)		?		
Customer : Yes, th	nank you.			
Waiter : That's	60 pounds.			
Customer : (4)				
3 Supply the mis	sing parts in the following two mini-	-dialogues:		
1. You : Is the	re any juice in the fridge, mum?			
Mother :				
		7		
2. Alaa :		•		

Egyptian food is popular all over the world. Salma's favourite soup is molokhia. It's a kind of vegetable soup and it's very healthy. Her friend, Noha, likes koshari. Koshari is a very popular dish. There isn't any meat in it, but there are lentils. The other main ingredients are rice and pasta.

There aren't any tomatoes in this dish, but it is delicious with some tomato sauce on the top.

25

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحسي

a) should b) shouldn't

c) mustn't d) must to

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفيف

	Things being	
6 Read and correct the underlined words:	-	
1. Kapenta is a type of <u>vegetable</u> .	()	WB
2. Koshari has got rice and paste in it.	()	WB
3. Laila feels ill. She should sees a doctor.	()	WB
4. Ali should not to talk in the maths lesson.	()	WB
Write an email to your friend telling her about:		
"how to make rice pudding."		
(Your name is Ghada. Your friend's name is Doaa.)		

2+2.

9

Review B

Units 4, 5 & 6



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى في المعلمة

Review

Reading |

Pre-reading question: - What do you do at Sham El-Nessim?

Match paragraphs 1-4 with the headings a-d.

SB page 64

Sham El-Nessim

1. What and when is it?

Sham El-Nessim is my favourite time of the year. We enjoy it at the start of spring. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE!.

2. What people do

Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea.

3. What I did

On this day, we eat a lot of special food. Do you want to know how to enjoy feseekh(1)?

Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat too much!

4. A recipe

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo? We are painting eggs! We always do this. We didn't see our cousins last year, but we made a video call. It was fun to talk to them on the phone.

Do you know any other special food? Click on the icon at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a recipe for it.

Post-reading question: - How do you eat feseekh?



ئىيغ (1)











Lesson

Listening



Pre-listening question: - How do you make pancakes?

Listen and number the pictures in the correct order.

SB page 65











Speaker: In UK(1), many people eat pancakes(2) at the start of spring. How do you make pancakes?

المملكة المتعدة (1)

Put all your ingredients in a bowl and add two eggs. Stir everything together. Put butter in pan. When the butter is hot,

الكمك المحلى (2)

you should start cooking your pancakes, but each pancake takes

(3) June

2 or 3 minutes on one side, then cook the other side of the pancakes. Eat your pancake with honey and nuts or with sugar and lemon juice. They are delicious.

Post-listening question: - What do you think of pancakes?

Reading

3. Read the email and complete Judy's shopping list.

WB page 116



Hi Judy,

The family party is on Saturday. There are ten people. Can you help me and buy the shopping? Five people like fish.

Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles is enough for the children. We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles. Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check we have enough chairs.

Many thanks

Mona



Lesson

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى كالمحسوس

2+2-8

Proctice

2

Based on Units 4, 5 & 6

Listen. Are these sentences true (T) or false	55.482			B) mo
	F			T
 We are having a picnic at the zoo. 	()	()
My little sister is making a sandcastle.	()	()
My big brother is riding a horse.	()	()
4. My sisters are swimming in the sea.	()	()
5. My uncle is sleeping in a car.	()	()
Listen again and answer the questions:				
1. Where was the picnic?				
,				
2. Who was sleeping in a tent?				
Complete the following dialogue:				
Waiter : Good afternoon! What would you li	ike?			
Customer : (1)	,	olea	se.	
Waiter : OK. Anything else?				
Customer : Yes, I'd like chicken, please.				
Waiter : Small or large?				
Customer : Small, please.				
Waiter : And (2)			any dr	inks?
Customer : (3)				
Waiter : Yes, we've got apple and orange ju				
Customer: I'd like orange, please. (4)				
Waiter : OK. That's 80 pounds.				
Customer: Here you are . Thank you!				
Supply the missing parts in the following m	ini-dialogue	s:		
Waiter : How can I help you?				
Customer: Hello.				
	?			
Nasser :				

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى

الصف الأول الأعدادي

2+2

Practice 2			
spring. Sham El- Nessi in a park or next to the where they make san special food. Do you v fish and have it with s and you shouldn't eat A) Answer the following 1. When does Sham El 2. What is the passage	my favourite time of im started in 2700 BCI eriver with their familiadcastles and swim in vant to know how to estalad. It's delicious, but too much! g questions: I-Nessim start?	the year. We enjoint the year. We enjoy ies. Many people all the sea. On this denjoy feseekh? Add to you should buy it	otians have a picnic so go to the beach, lay, we eat a lot of lemon juice to the from a good shop
3. What is feseekh?			
B) Choose the correct a			
4. Many Egyptians go	to on Sh	nam El-Nessim Day.	
a) hospital	b) school	c) parks	d) seas
5. Sham El-Nessim is			
a) in the middle	b) at the end	c) at the start	d) after
Last week, I travelled Station, then we got on for example, England ar Giza. I enjoyed the view was beautiful. We arrive They wanted to see the there at ten o'clock. My	nd Australia. The train le from the window and I d at Luxor at a quarter p Valley of the Kings! Th uncle was there to me	My father bought or eople from many co ft Cairo at 8 o'clock, a saw the Nile. There bast six. Many tourist e Train continued to	untries on the train, and soon we passed were lots of boats. It ts left the train here. Aswan. We arrived
A) Answer the following			
 When did you travel 			
2. Why did many touris	sts leave the train?		
When did you arrive	in Aswan?		
B) Choose the correct ar			
4. The train left Cairo a	toʻclock		
a) seven	b) eight	c) nine	d) ten
5. My me	eets us in Aswan.		
a) aunt	b) cousin	c) grandfather	d) unalo
	b) cousin	c) grandiatrier	d) uncle
264	b) cousin	C) grandiather	a) uncle

Review B

d) do

d) make

d) stay

d) gave

d) a lot of

d) should to

WB

WB

W8

WB

6) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We cana video call to your cousins in England.

a) write b) make

I'd like toa selfie in front of the river. b) do a) take c) tap

3. It is important tosafe online.

a) sleep b) stand

4. Wea picnic last holiday. a) had b) made

5. This cake is very sweet. There's too sugar in it. b) much a) enough c) many

6. We eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it.

a) shouldn't b) should c) shouldn't to

7. Beans and vegetables do not have sugar or fat. a) a b) some c) much d) many

c) sit

c) took

8. She you a photo now.

a) sending b) sends c) is sending d) is sent

9. It is a good idea to eat between two and four of fruit a day. a) spears b) species c) spices d) pieces

10. My family and I went to the beach and I a sandcastle. WB

a) made b) had c) climbed d) camped

11. Ais a word or numbers you use to go onto a website. WB

a) keyword b) password c) crossword d) secret word 12. I rode on a camel. Thatfun. WB

a) is b) was c) were d) are 13. How eggs do we need? WB

a) much b) many c) long d) old

14. Don't put butter in the pan.

b) too much a) enough c) many d) some

a) are b) isn't c) aren't d) is

هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى فالصفه

15. There a lot of milk in the fridge.

WB

W8

Practice 2

2+2.8

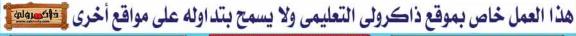
. A: My favourite football team lost 5-0! B: What aexciting! . Doesn't tell people your personal information. B: Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences: . There are some milk in the fridge, but there is not any hummus. We didn't watch TV. We play basketball. . I don't like this tea. There is too many sugar in it! A: Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on: "What you did last summer"	1. Tap on the icon on your laptop. 2. A: My favourite football team lost 5-0! B: What aexciting! 3. Doesn't tell people your personal information. B: Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences: 1. There are some milk in the fridge, but there is not any hummus. 2. We didn't watch TV. We play basketball. (
A: My favourite football team lost 5-0! B: What aexciting! Doesn't tell people your personal information. B: Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences: There are some milk in the fridge, but there is not any hummus. We didn't watch TV. We play basketball. I don't like this tea. There is too many sugar in it! A: Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on: "What you did last summer" B: Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on your favourite traditional food: (Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).	2. A: My favourite football team lost 5-0! B: What <u>aexciting!</u> 3. <u>Doesn't</u> tell people your personal information. (
Doesn't tell people your personal information. B: Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences: There are some milk in the fridge, but there is not any hummus. We didn't watch TV. We play basketball. I don't like this tea. There is too many sugar in it! A: Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on: "What you did last summer" B: Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on your favourite traditional food: (Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).	B: Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences: There are some milk in the fridge, but there is not any hummus. (
B: Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences: There are some milk in the fridge, but there is not any hummus. We didn't watch TV. We play basketball. I don't like this tea. There is too many sugar in it! A: Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on: "What you did last summer" B: Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on your favourite traditional food: (Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).	B: Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences: There are some milk in the fridge, but there is not any hummus. (WE
There are some milk in the fridge, but there is not any hummus. We didn't watch TV. We play basketball. I don't like this tea. There is too many sugar in it! A: Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on: "What you did last summer" B: Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on your favourite traditional food: (Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).	I. There are some milk in the fridge, but there is not any hummus. (WE
B: Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on your favourite traditional food: (Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).	. We didn't watch TV. We play basketball. ()	WE
A: Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on: "What you did last summer" B: Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on your favourite traditional food: (Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		WE
A: Write a paragraph of SIX (6) sentences on: "What you did last summer" B: Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on your favourite traditional food: (Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).	. I don't like this tea. There is too many sugar in it! (
#What you did last summer" B: Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on your favourite traditional food: (Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		WE
#What you did last summer" B: Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on your favourite traditional food: (Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		•••••
B: Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on your favourite traditional food: (Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		
(Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).	"What you did last summer"	
(Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		
(Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		
(Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		
(Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		
(Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		
(Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		•••••
(Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		
(Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		7
(Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem).		•••••
	B: Write an email of SIX (6) sentences on your favourite traditional food:	WE
	(Your name is Donia and your friend's name is Reem)	
	(Tour haine is bonia and your mend shaine is neem).	
		•••••
Δi)		
	ia i	





End of Term Practice

		٠,		,
Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or False (F)?			
		F	. 1	Γ
1. They are in a shop.	()	()
2. The man wants a salad.	()	()
3. There isn't any Egyptian rice pudding.	()	()
4. He would like a small pudding.	()	()
5. There aren't any raisins.	()	()
Listen again and answer the questions:				
1. What is the problem?				
2. What do you think the waiter can do to help?		7)	n n	
Circle the correct words:				
1. There are too (many/enough) people on this be	each. Let's	go to	a diff	feren
2. The bus leaves in an hour so we can go to the r		Tilling		
too much) time.				
3. I don't like this tea. There is too (much/many) so	ıgar in it.			
4. My cousin is very good (of/at) gymnastics.				
5. This is Judy and (Leila's/Leilas') project.				
6. Ahmed likes History because he loves (learn/lea	arning) at	out t	he pas	t.
Read and correct the mistakes in these senter	ices.			
Yunis goes often to school by bus.				
2. That teachers name is Mrs Abdelaziz.				
3. My aunt have got long curly hair.	•••••			
				•••••
4. Zeinab can't talk to you now because she does	her home	work		



2+2-90

Practice

5. Did you saw a dolphin when you were on holiday?

- You shouldn't to eat too many crisps.
- We go to the beach yesterday.
- Read the text and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are Science and Computer Studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English.

Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. I now have a friend from Uganda! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

b) in England

d) in a summer school

b) meet new friends

- 1. Where is Mona?
 - a) in Egypt
 - c) in London
- 2. What are her favourite subjects?
 - a) Science and English
 - b) Science and Computer Studies
 - c) English and Geography
 - d) Science, Computer Studies and English
- 3. Why does she want to speak good English?
 - b) to speak to people a) to go to London
 - c) to go to Uganda d) for her job
- 4. Which one of these does she not use to learn English?
 - b) her phone a) her teacher
 - d) a tablet c) a laptop
- 5. Which of these did she not do in England last year?
 - a) swim in a river d) cycle to school c) practise her English



2+2-8

End of Term Practice

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••		
••••••		
isten and match each	speaker with what they are	e doing.
a) Saying what some	eone is like.	
b) Giving advice abo	out technology.	
Talking about wh	at someone has.	
d) Talking about the	past.	
e) Reading a recipe.		
Talking about how	w frequently you do somethin	ng.
isten and circle the w		2.000.1000
ives / loves	2. any / many	3. flag / flat 6. desk / disc
hirty / thirteen	5. bat / bag	6. desk/disc
Write about Heidi and	Alice's Adventures in Wond	lerland.
rite a short summary o	f each book.	
ay which story you pref	er and why.	
, which story you prei	er and why.	

Listening Texts

Check your English Workbook. Check your English. Exercise 3

3. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Injy : Hi Lama. Is that a new bag?

Lama: Hi Injy. No, it's my sister's bag.

Injy : It's big. What's in it?

Lama: This is my pencil case, it's red.

Injy: Is that your book?

Lama: Yes, it's very good. It's about animals.

Injy: Is that a ball in your bag?

Lama: No, it's an orange. I like oranges.

Injy : I prefer apples. Is that your phone?

Lama: Yes, it is.

Injy: Look! It's ten o'clock, time for our English class.

Unit 1

Workbook. Check your English. Exercise 3

General Exercises on Lessons 1, 2 & 3

Listen and answer the following

My name's Basmala. My aunt is called Samira, She's from Giza, She works in a school. She teaches English.

General Exercises on Lessons 4, 5 & 6 Listen and answer the following questions:

Heidi is an orphan girl. She lives with her grandfather in the mountains. When her aunt takes her to the city, she doesn't like it. She has many adventures there.

Cumulative Exercises (1)

Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or False (F):

My name's Sandy. I live in Cairo. I live with my aunt she's called Huda. She works in a school. She teaches English.

Unit 2

General Exercises on Lessons 1, 2 & 3

Listen and answer the following questions:

My name's Nadeen. I have eight lessons a day. I always have art at 10.30 on Sunday. So Sunday is my favourite day. The break takes thirty minutes.

General Exercises on Lessons 4, 5 & 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My friend Reem is in Grade 7. She is from Giza. She is 12. She likes maths and science. She isn't good at art. She reads English books in the evenings.



questions:

Listening Texts

Cumulative Exercises (2)

Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or False (F):

I usually get up at half past six. I have breakfast at seven. Then I put on my school uniform. I go to school at seven fifteen. The first lesson starts at 7.45. I go home at ten to three.

Unit 3

General Exercises on Lessons 1, 2 & 3

Listen and answer the following questions: Mohamed Salah is a sports star. He plays

football for good teams in Europe. He is a fast runner. He's 1.75 metres tall. He's got dark curly hair and a beard. He gives money to poor people.

General Exercises on Lessons 4, 5 & 6 Listen and choose the correct answer

from a, b, c or d: Alice's adventure in Wonderland is a book

by Lewis Carroll. It is a children's story. She is a sensible girl. Alice is also brave and clever. She meets lots of interesting people in wonderland. The Cheshire Cat helps her.

Cumulative Exercises (3)

Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or false (F)?

Mr Sherif is Hamid's teacher. He has got short, straight hair. He hasn't got glasses, but he's got a moustache. He's kind and he is very clever.

Review A

Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or false (F)?

My favourite book is by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of

Unit

are scary. I like the book very much.

them are very friendly, but some of them

General Exercises on Lessons 1, 2 & 3

Listen and answer the following questions:

We are at break now. All of us doing different things. I am not eating. I am taking a selfie. My friend Soha is making a video call. She isn't using her mobile. Most of the other students are playing in the playground.

General Exercises on Lessons 4, 5 & 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favourite lesson is computer studies lesson. My teacher is called Mr Medhat. We often have it on Sundays. The teacher told us how to stay safe online. He told us to keep our passwords secret and never tell anyone our personal information.

Answers

Cumulative Exercises (4)

Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or False (F):

I am Ziad. This is my classroom. We often use tablets in school. There are two laptop computers in the classroom. My friend Omar is printing his homework. We don't use our phones in the classroom.

Unit 5

General Exercises on Lessons 1, 2 & 3

Listen and answer the following questions:

Last summer, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach in Hurghada. Mariam made a sandcastle. She didn't go into the cave because she was frightened.

General Exercises on Lessons 4, 5 & 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm back from my holiday in Paris. The food is delicious. I ate snails there. I climbed the Eiffel Tower. We went on a boat on the River Seine. We didn't have time to go to the Science Museum.

Cumulative Exercises (5)

Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or False (F):

In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food. Then we played games and my brother Ali rode his bike.

Unit 6

General Exercises on Lessons 1, 2 & 3

Listen and answer the following questions:

Fruit is a great snack. It's very good for us. Most people like the sweet taste. You should eat between 2 and 4 pieces of fruit a day.

General Exercises on Lessons 4, 5 & 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: I went to the café last weekend. I went

with my family. We took a bus to go there because our car isn't working. We had chicken with rice and salad. We had basbousa and kunafa. The café was nice.

Cumulative Exercises (6)

We liked our food.

Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or False (F):

My favourite dish is koshari. It's a popular meal in Egypt. I eat it with my family. It's a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It's very healthy.

Review B

Listen. Are these sentences True (T) or false (F):

We are having a picnic on the beach. My little sister is making a sandcastle. My big brother is riding a bike. My cousins are swimming in the sea. My uncle is sleeping in a tent. It was a nice picnic.

Listening Texts

WB. End of term practice.

Listen are these sentences True (T) or False (F)

: Hello! What would you Waiter

like?

Customer: I'd like chicken pizza,

please.

Waiter : Anything else?

Customer: Yes, Have you got any

Egyptian rice pudding.

Waiter : Yes, small or large?

Customer : Small, please. I;d like it with

raisins, please?

Waiter : Oh I'm sorry, we haven't got any raisins.

WB. End of term practice. Ex. 7

Listen and match each speaker with what they are doing.

- 1. These are my brother's drums. He plays them every day.
- I usually read before I go to bed.
- She is very clever kind and sensible.
- 4. Don't make friends with people you don't know online.
- 5. We visited our cousins and went to a museum.
- 6. Put the rice and water in a sauce pan. Boil the rice per 20 minutes, then add the milk slowly.

WB. End of term practice.

Listen and circle the word that you hear.

- 1. My aunt likes this cafe' she lives next to it.
- 2. There aren't many people in the museum today.
- 3. What colour is the flag? I have 13 apps on my phone.
- I have got a green bag.
- 6. My book is on my desk.

Irregular Verbs

الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Group 1

Pres	ent form	Simple past	Past participle
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
hurt	يصيب/يؤنى	hurt	hurt
put	يضع	put	put

Group 2

2+2

Preser	nt form	Simple past	Past participle
be	يكون	was, were	been
break	يكسر	broke	broken
drive	يقود	drove	driven
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell	fallen
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
give	يغطى	gave	given
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
speak	يتدد	spoke	spoken
take	ياخذ	took	taken
wake up	يستيقظ	woke/waked up	woken up
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Group 3

Pres	ent form	Simple past	Past participle
begin	يبدا	began	begun
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
run	یجری	ran	run
sing	يغنى	sang	sung
sink	يغوص	sank	sunk
swim	يعوم / يسبح	swam	swum

Irregular Verbs

Pres	ent form	Simple past	Past participle
bleed	ينزف	bled	bled
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
build	يبنى	built	built
burn	يحرق	burnt	burnt
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
catch	يمسك / يلحق / يصطاد	caught	caught
feel	يحس / يشعر	felt	felt
spend	يقضى	spent	spent
stand	يقف	stood	stood
teach	يتعلم	taught	taught
tell	يخبر	told	told
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
win	يفوز	won	won
find	يجد	found	found
have	يمثلك	had	had
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
hold	يمسك	held	held
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
lead	يقود	led	led
leave	يترك/ يغادر	left	left
lend	يسلف	lent	lent
light	يضىء	lit/lighted	lit/lighted
lose	يخسر / يفقد	lost	lost
make	يمنع	made	made
mean	يعنى / يقصد	meant	meant
meet	يقابل	met	met

275

pay

2+2-8

paid يدفع

paid

Irregular Verbs

read	يقرأ	read	read
say	يقول	said	said
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
send	يرسل	sent	sentW
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
sleep	ينام	slept	slept

Group 5			
Present form		Simple past	Past participle
do	يفعل	did	done
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
fly	يطير	flew	flown
grow	ينمو / يزرع / يكبر	grew	grown
know	يعرف	knew	known
see	یری	saw	seen
throw	يرمي / يلقى	threw	thrown
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

12+2-0

A-a

add (v) [U6]: put something together with another thing adventure (n) [U1]: an exciting activity angry (adj) [U3]: very cross

Arabic (n) [U2]: the main language of Arab people

Art (n) [U2]: painting and drawing attic (n) [U1]: the top room in a house aunt (n) [U1]: your mother's or father's sister

B-b

band (n) [U1]: a group of people singing and/or playing musical instruments together

basketball (n) [U1]: a ball sport for two teams of five players. To play basketball, you throw the ball through a net. beach (n) [U5]: the area of sand or small stones in front of the sea

bean (n) [U6]: a long, narrow green vegetable that you usually eat cooked beard (n) [U3]: hair that grows on a man's face or chin

bell (n) [U2]: an object that makes a noise when you ring it. The bell rings at the end of the lesson

bike (n) [U5]: a bicycle. Let's ride our bikes in the park

biscuit (n) [U6]: a sweet snack baked in the oven, usually small, flat and round

blond (adj) [U3]: yellow or light brown hair

boil (v) [U4]: if you boil water, it is very hot and bubbles

brave (adj) [U3]: not easily frightened

break (n) [U2]: the time at school when you do not have lessons

brother (n) [U1]: a boy or man with the same parents as you

busy (adj) [U1]: spending a lot of time doing things

C-c

cake (n) [U6]: a sweet food that you bake in the oven camel (n) [U5]: a desert animal of Africa and Asia with a long neck; people can ride it camp (v) [U5]: sleep outside in a tent canoe (n) [U2]: a small, narrow boat for one or two people

carrot (n) [U6]: a long, narrow, orange vegetable that grows in the ground castle (n) [U5]: a large, old building with towers. Long ago, the King and Queen lived in this castle.

cave (n) [U5]: an opening in a large rock or mountain character (n) [U3]: a person in a book or film charge (v) [U4]: increase the power of a battery

cheese (n) [U6]: a yellow, white or orange food that is made from milk chess (n) [U1]: a board game for two people chocolate (n) [U6]: a sweet food that is made from cocoa beans

cinnamon (n) [U6]: a sweet spice used in cooking city (n) [U1]: a place with lots of houses, shops and people clever (adj) [U3]: good at learning things

click (v) [U4]: press a mouse or icon to make something happen on a computer Computer Studies (n): the subject for learning how to use a computer

crisps (n) [U6]: hard, dry potato pieces that you eat as a snack cup (n) [U6]: something you can drink from, about 250 ml. curly (adj) [U3]: hair that has turns. Her hair isn't straight. It's curly.

cycle (v) [U2]: ride a bicycle

D-d

dad (n) [U1]: another word for father dark (adj) [U3]: brown or black daughter (n) [U1]: a girl child. Mr Badawi has a daughter called Amal



eagle (n) [U4]: a large bird that can fly high and see very well

Glossary

Е-е

email (n) [U4]: a letter or message you send on a computer English (n) [U2]: the language of England, the USA and many other countries equipment (n) [U6]: the things you need to do an activity Europe (n) [U3]: a continent. France, Germany, Italy and Spain are some of the countries in Europe.

F-f

fat (n) [U6]: natural oils in food. Butter contains a lot of fat. fig (n) [U6]: a sweet fruit with a purple skin that is very soft inside fizzy drink (n) [U6]: a drink that has bubbles and a lot of sugar flag (n) [U5]: the colours of a country on a piece of material football match (n) [U1]: a game of football forest (n) [U5]: a large area with lots of trees close together fridge (n) [U6]: a machine that keeps food and drink cold friendly (adj) [U3]: behaving in a way to people that shows you like them fruit juice (n) [U6]: the liquid from a fruit that you can drink. I'd like a glass of fruit juice, please.

G-g

game (v) [U5]: an activity or competition that you play with one or more people glasses (n) [U3]: what you wear over your eyes to help you see better goal (n) [U3]: when you win a point in e.g. football. Our team got three goals! goat (n) [U1]: a mountain animal you can eat or get milk from grandfather (n) [U1]: your mother's or father's father grandmother (n) [U1]: your mother's or father's mother gymnast (n) [U1]: a person who does gymnastics gymnastics (n) [U1]: a sport which has a lot of different skills, such as jumping

H-h

hall (n) [U2]: a large room where people can meet together

holiday flat (n) [U5]: an apartment you can stay in for a holiday, usually near the sea

Home Economics (n) [U2]: the subject for learning about cooking and skills for the home

 $\textbf{hotel (n) [U5]:} \ a \ building \ where \ you \ can \ pay \ for \ a \ room \ to \ sleep \ in \ for \ a \ night \ or \ longer$

hummus (n) [U6]: a soft food made from chickpeas

I-i

icon (n) [U4]: a small picture on a computer screen

ingredient (n) [U6]: something you use to make food

J-j

jungle (n) [U5]: a tropical forest with lots of plants and trees

. 64

kettle (n) [U4]: a machine in the kitchen that makes water hot

kind (adj) [U3]: wanting to help and be good to people

M-m

lake (n) [U5]: a large natural area of water, with land all around

laptop computer (n) [U4]: a small, light computer that you can carry easily

late (adj) [U3]: arriving after the correct time. The bus was 20 minutes late today.

library (n) [U2]: a place where you can borrow or read books

long (adj) [U3]: not short



هذا العمل خاص بموقع ذاكرولي التعليمي ولا يسمح بتداوله على مواقع أخرى والمحسوس

N-n

mobile phone (n) [U4]: a small phone that you can carry with you mountain (n) [U5]: a high area of land, higher than the land around it. I climbed a high mountain.

mouse (n) [U4]: an object you move so that you can read and write on a computer screen

moustache (n) [U3]: hair that grows above a man's top lip MP3 player (n) [U4]: a machine that can play music mum (n) [U1]: another word for mother nature (n) [U4]: the plants, animals, land, sea, etc. around us

nut (n) [U6]: a small, dry fruit with a hard shell

0-0

olive (n) [U6]: a small, green or black fruit that you eat, or use to make oil online (adj) [U4]: using the internet orphan (n) [U1]: a child with no mother or father

P-p

password (n) [U4]: a special word or letters that you write before you can use a computer or website

pepper (n) [U6]: a green, red or yellow vegetable that you cook or eat in a salad phone charger (n) [U4]: you use a phone charger to increase the battery power of

a mobile phone picnic (n) [U5]: a lunch that you prepare yourself to take on a trip and eat outside playground (n) [U2]: a place outside where children at school can play

pomegranate (n) [U6]: a round, red fruit with a thick skin and many large, red seeds printer (n) [U4]: a machine that can print documents from a computer

Q-q

queen (n) [U5]: a woman who rules a country

R-r

raisin (n) [U6]: a small, dry grape

recipe (n) [U6]: instructions on how to make a meal

Religion (n) [U2]: the subject for learning about what people believe in river (n) [U5]: water that flows naturally from the mountains to the sea

salad (n) [U6]: cold, fresh vegetables (not cooked) together in a bowl. Would you like some tomato and onion salad?

salt (n) [U6]: a natural, white ingredient that can come from the sea, it makes food taste better. Don't put too much salt on your food.

sand (n) [U5]: very small pieces of rock that you find next to a river or the sea sandcastle (n) [U5]: a building made of sand

saucepan (n) [U6]: a round container used to cook things scary (adj) [U3]: something that makes you feel frightened

Science (n) [U2]: the subject for learning about how to test and understand facts.

It includes Biology, Chemistry and Physics.

score (v) [U3]: win points in a game or match sea (n) [U5]: the salt water that covers a large part of the Earth

secret (adj) [U4]: something that only you or a few people know

selfie (n) [U4]: a photo you take of yourself

sensible (adj) [U3]: thinking carefully so that you do the right thing

short (adj) [U3]: not long sister (n) [U1]: a girl or woman with the same parents as you

smile (n) [U3]: when the corners of your mouth turn up to show that you are happy

snack (n) [U6]: a small amount of food that you eat between meals snail (n) [U5]: a small, slow animal with a shell on its back snowmobile (n) [U2]: a vehicle that you can drive on snow Social Studies (n) [U2]: the subject for studying people and how they live son (n) [U1]: a boy child. He is my son. I am his father souvenir (n) [U5]: something that you buy to remember a place or an event you went to. I bought some souvenirs at the market in Cairo spice (n) [U6]: parts of a plant that you can put in food to give it a special taste stew (n) [U6]: a meal made with meat and vegetables in one pot stir (v) [U6]: move around ingredients, sugar, etc. with a spoon straight (adj) [U3]: without any turns. She has long, straight hair swimming (n) [U1]: moving your body through water

T-t

tablet (n) [U4]: a flat, mobile computer that is smaller than a laptop computer tap (v) [U4]: touch quickly with your finger teaspoon (n) [U6]: a small spoon of about 5 ml. Add a teaspoon of salt tent (n) [U5]: something that you can sleep in when you go camping text message (n) [U4]: sentences you write on a mobile phone. My friend sent me a text message.

together (adv) [U3]: with one or more people tower (n) [U5]: a tall, narrow part of a building. The castle has four towers in each corner.

train (v) [U1]: practise a sport turn on (v) [U4]: start a machine. Turn on your computer twice (adv) [U3]: two times twins (n) [U1]: two children born at the same time

U-u

Uganda (n) [U2]: a country in central Africa uncle (n) [U1]: your mother or father's brother

V-v

vegetable (n) [U6]: a plant you can eat e.g. a carrot video call (n) [U4]: a way to talk to and see people online view (n) [U5]: the things you can see from a certain place. The hotel has a beautiful view of the sea.

voluntary work (n) [U1]: work you do without getting money

W-w

waterfall (n) [U5]: the part of a river where the water falls down from a high place website (n) [U4]: an internet page with information about something wheelchair (n) [U3]: a chair with wheels, for people who cannot walk whiteboard (n) [U4]: a classroom board that is sometimes connected to a computer



